ORACLE®
PEOPLESOFT

PeopleSoft Cash Management 9.1 PeopleBook

January 2012

ORACLE®

PeopleSoft Cash Management 9.1 PeopleBook
SKU fscm91fp2ftcm-b0112

Contents

Chapter 6

Chapter 7

Chapter 8

Chapter 11

PeopleSoft Cash Management 9.1 PeopleBook Preface

This preface discusses:

- PeopleSoft application fundamentals.

- Pages with deferred processing.

- Common elements in this PeopleBook.

Note. This PeopleBook documents only page elements that require additional explanation. If a page element is not documented with the process or task in which it is used, then it either requires no additional explanation or is documented with the common elements for the section, chapter, or PeopleBook.

Oracle's PeopleSoft Products

This PeopleBook refers to these products:

- PeopleSoft Cash Management.

- PeopleSoft Deal Management.

- PeopleSoft Risk Management.

- PeopleSoft Payables.

- PeopleSoft Receivables.

- PeopleSoft General Ledger.

- JD Edwards General Accounting.

PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals

PeopleSoft Cash Management 9.1 PeopleBook provides implementation and processing information for Cash Management. However, additional, essential information describing the setup and design of your system resides in companion documentation. The companion documentation consists of important topics that apply to many or all PeopleSoft applications across the Financials, Enterprise Service Automation, and Supply Chain Management product lines. You should be familiar with the contents of these PeopleBooks.

The following companion PeopleBooks apply specifically to Cash Management:

- *PeopleSoft Applications Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*

- *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*

- *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*

- *PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook*

Pages with Deferred Processing

Several pages in Cash Management operate in deferred processing mode. Most fields on these pages are not updated or validated until you save the page or refresh it by clicking a button, link, or tab. This delayed processing has various implications for the field values on the page—for example, if a field contains a default value, any value you enter before the system updates the page overrides the default. Another implication is that the system updates quantity balances or totals only when you save or otherwise refresh the page.

See Also

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Application Designer

PeopleBooks and the PeopleSoft Online Library

A companion PeopleBook called *PeopleBooks and the PeopleSoft Online Library* contains general information, including:

- Understanding the PeopleSoft online library and related documentation.

- How to send PeopleSoft documentation comments and suggestions to Oracle.

- How to access hosted PeopleBooks, downloadable HTML PeopleBooks, and downloadable PDF PeopleBooks as well as documentation updates.

- Understanding PeopleBook structure.

- Typographical conventions and visual cues used in PeopleBooks.

- ISO country codes and currency codes.

- PeopleBooks that are common across multiple applications.

- Common elements used in PeopleBooks.

- Navigating the PeopleBooks interface and searching the PeopleSoft online library.

- Displaying and printing screen shots and graphics in PeopleBooks.

- How to manage the locally installed PeopleSoft online library, including web site folders.

- Understanding documentation integration and how to integrate customized documentation into the library.

- Application abbreviations found in application fields.

You can find *PeopleBooks and the PeopleSoft Online Library* in the online PeopleBooks Library for your PeopleTools release.

Common Elements Used in This PeopleBook

Account	ChartField that identifies the nature of a transaction for corporate accounts.
Affiliate	ChartField used to map transactions between business units when using a single interunit account.
Alt Acct (alternate account)	ChartField that identifies the nature of a transaction for statutory accounts. This field appears only if you enabled the Alternate Account option for your organization and for the general ledger business unit.
Attachment	Click this link to add, delete, and view attachments. When adding large attachments, you should save the transaction before adding the attachment.
	Note. You can also add attachments after saving some components.
Class	ChartField that identifies a particular appropriation when you combine it with a fund, department ID, program code, and budget reference.
Currency	Code that identifies the type of currency for an amount, such as USD or FRF.
Dept (department)	ChartField that indicates who is responsible for or affected by the transaction.
Description	Free-flow text up to 256 characters.
Effective Date	Date on which a table row becomes effective; the date that an action begins. For example, to close out a ledger on June 30, the effective date for the ledger closing would be July 1. This date also determines when you can view and change the information. Pages and batch processes that use the information use the current row.
Fund	ChartField that represents structural units for education and government accounting. Can also represent a divisional breakdown in your organization.
Fund Affiliate	ChartField used to correlate transactions between funds when using a single intraunit account.
Language	The language in which you want the field labels and report headings of your reports to print. The field values appear as you enter them.
Oper Unit (operating unit)	ChartField used to identify a location, such as a distribution warehouse or sales center.

Process Frequency	Select from:
	Once: Runs the request the next time the batch process runs. After the batch process runs, the process frequency is automatically set to *Don't Run.*
	Always: Runs the request every time the batch process runs.
	Don't Run: Ignores the request when the batch process runs.
Process Monitor	This link takes you to the Process List page, where you can view the status of submitted process requests.
Product	ChartField that captures additional information useful for profitability and cash flow analysis by product sold or manufactured.
Program	ChartField that identifies groups of related activities, cost centers, revenue centers, responsibility centers, and academic programs. Tracks revenue and expenditures for programs.
Project	ChartField that captures information for project or grant accounting.
Report ID	The report identifier.
Report Manager	This link takes you to the Report List page, where you can view report content, check the status of a report, and see content detail messages (which show you a description of the report and the distribution list).
Run	This button takes you to the Process Scheduler request page, where you can specify the location where a process or job runs and the process output format.
Run Control ID	An identification code that identifies the run parameters for a report or process.
SetID	An identification code that represents a set of control table information or TableSet. A TableSet is a group of tables (records) necessary to define your company's structure and processing options.
Short Description	Free-flow text up to 15 characters.
Status	Indicates whether a row in a table is *Active* or *Inactive.* You cannot display inactive rows on transaction pages or use them for running batch processes. To maintain an audit trail, inactivate rather than delete data that you no longer use.
Unit	Business unit for an item.

See Also

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Applications User's Guide

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler

Chapter 1

Getting Started with PeopleSoft Cash Management

This chapter discusses:

- Cash Management business processes.

- Cash Management integrations.

- Cash Management implementation.

Cash Management Business Processes

Cash Management provides the following business processes:

- Bank fee and account analysis.

- Position tree creation and maintenance.

- Cash position calculation and review.

- Transactional bilateral netting.

- Electronic funds transfers (EFTs).

- Cash flow settlement payments.

- Investment Pools.

- Accounting events and accounting entry creation, maintenance, and review.

- VAT (value-added tax) accounting creation and adjustment.

- In-house banking activities.

This PeopleBook covers these business processes in the business process chapters.

Cash Management Integrations

Cash Management integrates with the following PeopleSoft applications:

- Deal Management

- Risk Management

- Payables

- Receivables

- General Ledger

- JD Edwards General Ledger

We cover integration considerations in the implementation chapters in this PeopleBook.

Supplemental information about third-party application integrations is located on the My Oracle Support web site.

Cash Management Implementation

PeopleSoft Setup Manager enables you to review a list of setup tasks for your organization for the products that you are implementing. The setup tasks include the components that you must set up, listed in the order in which you must enter data into the component tables, and links to the corresponding PeopleBook documentation.

Cash Management also provides component interfaces to help you load data from your existing system into Cash Management tables. Use the Excel to Component Interface utility with the component interfaces to populate the tables.

This table lists all of the components that have component interfaces:

Component	*Component Interfaces*	*References*
Account (GL_ACCOUNT)	ACCOUNT_CF	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Account Values.
Alternate Account (ALTACCT)	ALTACCT_CF	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Using Alternate Account."
Operating Unit (OPERATING_UNIT)	OPER_UNIT_CF	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Operating Unit Values.
Department (DEPARTMENT)	DEPT_CF	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Department Values.
Fund Code (FUND_DEFINITION)	FUND_CF	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Fund Code Values.

Component	Component Interfaces	References
Statistics Code (STATISTICS_TBL)	STATISTICS_CODE	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Statistics Code Values.
Class Field (CLASS_PNL)	CLASS_CF	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Class Field Values.
Budget Reference (BUDREF_PNL)	BUDGET_REF	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Budget Reference Values.
Program Code (PROGRAM_DEFINITION)	PROGRAM_CF	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Program Code Values.
Scenario (BD_SCENARIO)	BUDGET_SCENARIO	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Scenario Values.
ChartField 1 (CHARTFIELD1)	CHARTFIELD1	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Values for Expansion ChartFields 1, 2, and 3.
ChartField 2 (CHARTFIELD2)	CHARTFIELD2	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Values for Expansion ChartFields 1, 2, and 3.
ChartField 3 (CHARTFIELD3)	CHARTFIELD3	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Values for Expansion ChartFields 1, 2, and 3.
Interunit Template (IU_INTER_TMPLT)	IU_INTER_TMPLT	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Using Interunit and Intraunit Accounting and ChartField Inheritance," Defining Interunit Templates.

Component	Component Interfaces	References
Intraunit Template (IU_INTRA_TMPLT)	IU_INTRA_TMPLT	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Using Interunit and Intraunit Accounting and ChartField Inheritance," Defining Intraunit Templates.
Interunit Pair Maintenance (IU_INTER_PR_BASIC)	IU_INTER_PR_BASIC	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Using Interunit and Intraunit Accounting and ChartField Inheritance," Interunit Pairs.
Ledgers for a Unit (BUSINESS_UNIT_LED)	EM_BUS_UNIT_LED	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Ledgers," Defining Ledgers for a Business Unit.
Value Added Tax Code (TAX_CODE_VAT)	TAX_CODE_VAT	See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT," Defining VAT Codes Using the Value Added Tax Code Page.
VAT Accounts by Business Unit (TAX_BU_CODE_VAT)	TAX_BU_CODE_VAT	See *PeopleSoft General Ledger 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Processing Value-Added Tax Transactions in General Ledger," Setting Up General Ledger Business Unit VAT Default Options.
VAT Entity (VAT_ENTITY_ID)	VAT_ENTITY_ID	See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT," Setting Up VAT Entities.
Vat Defaults CI Component (VAT_DEF_CI)	VAT_DEF_CI	See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT," Establishing VAT Defaults.
Bank Branch Information (BANK_BRANCHPNL)	TR_BANK_BRANCH_CI	See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Banks," Defining Bank Branches.
Financial Contacts (CONTACTS)	TR_FINANCIAL_CONTACTS_CI	See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Banks," Defining Financial Contacts.
Netting Participants (NET_PARTICIPANT)	TR_NET_PARTICIPANT_CI	See Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Defining Participant Relationships, page 112.

Component	Component Interfaces	References
Contact Info (CONTACT_INFO)	CONTACT	See *PeopleSoft Order to Cash Common Information 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Maintaining Contacts."
General Information (CUSTOMER_GENERAL)	CUSTOMER_MAIN_CI	See *PeopleSoft Order to Cash Common Information 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Maintaining General Customer Information," Adding General Customer Information.
User Preferences (OPR_DEFAULT)	OPR_DEFAULT_FIN	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining User Preferences," Defining Cross-Application User Preferences.
Fee Codes (DEFINE_FEE_CODE)	TR_DEFINE_FEE_CODE_CI	See Chapter 5, "Managing Fees and Account Analysis," Defining Fee Codes, page 34.
Settlement Instructions (SETTLEMENT_INSTRUC)	TR_SETTLEMENT_INSTRUCTIONS_CI	See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining Settlement Instructions.
Treasury Facility Review (FCLTY_DFN)	TR_FCLTY_BCI	See Chapter 4, "Managing Facilities," page 25.
Reconciliation Exceptions (TR_UNRECON_TRANS)	TR_UNRECON_TRANS	See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Reconciliation," Setting Up Reconciliation Tables for Sources and Rules.
Treasury Position Time Span (POS_TIME_SPAN_PNL)	TR_POS_TIME_SPAN	See Chapter 6, "Defining Cash Positions," page 55.
Create Position SQL (POS_CREATE_SQL)	TR_POS_CREATE_SQL	See Chapter 6, "Defining Cash Positions," Setting Up Trees and Positions, page 56.
Manual Position Entry (POS_GENERIC_ENTRY)	TR_MANUAL_POSITION_ENTRY_CI	See Chapter 6, "Defining Cash Positions," Setting Up Trees and Positions, page 56.
Netting Accounts (BANK_PNLNET)	TR_NETTING_ACCOUNTS_CI	See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining Netting Accounts.

Component	Component Interfaces	References
External Bank Accounts (BANK_EXTERNAL)	TR_EXTERNAL_ACCOUNTS_CI	See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining External Account Information.
External Transactions (GEN_TRAN_UPDT)	TR_EXTERNAL_TRANSACTIONS _CI	See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Reconciling Statements," Reconciling Externally Generated Transactions.

Other Sources of Information

In the planning phase of your implementation, take advantage of all PeopleSoft sources of information, including the installation guides and troubleshooting information. A complete list of these resources appears in the preface in *PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleBooks and the PeopleSoft Online Library,* with information about where to find the most current version of each.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Getting Started with PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing," Other Sources of Information

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Setup Manager

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Component Interfaces, "Using the Excel-to-Component Interface Utility"

Chapter 2

Defining Cash Management Processing Options

This chapter provides a listing of the setup requirements for Cash Management tables and discusses how to:

* Define business unit options.

* Define cross-referenced currency codes and holiday list IDs.

* Define market rates.

* Securing ChartFields for PeopleSoft Treasury.

* Integrating PeopleSoft Treasury with JD Edwards General Accounting.

Establishing Cash Management Options

This table provides a listing of custom navigation pages that are used to navigate to setup pages in Cash Management. These pages can be accessed through folders found on the Treasury Definitions Center page. This table lists the order the various components should be defined.

Page Name	Navigation	Usage	Setup Information
Treasury Definitions Center	Treasury Definitions Center	Access links, grouped by logical function, to setup pages for Treasury Management products. For easier retrieval, you can save this page in the My Favorites folder on the portal navigation menu.	

Page Name	Navigation	Usage	Setup Information
Banks	Click Banks.	Access pages to set up comprehensive bank information (such as bank, bank account, and bank branch information).	See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Banks." See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Counterparties." See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts." See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining Internal Account Information. See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining Financials and Supply Chain Management Common Definitions," Defining Common Journal Definitions.
Business Unit Related	Click Business Unit Related.	Access the Treasury Options page and specify Treasury Management-specific options for your business units.	See Chapter 2, "Defining Cash Management Processing Options," Defining Treasury Business Unit Options, page 10.
Fees	Click Fees.	Access pages to set up fee codes, tables, and structures.	See Chapter 5, "Managing Fees and Account Analysis," Setting Up Fee Structures, page 33.
Facilities	Click Facilities.	Access pages to set up and update facility information.	See Chapter 4, "Managing Facilities," Defining Facilities, page 26.
Settlements/Netting	Click Settlements/Netting.	Access pages to set up bilateral netting rules, participants, and contracts.	See Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Setting Up Bilateral Nets, page 109.
Position Worksheet	Click Position Worksheet.	Access pages to set up field types, position sources, SQL, and time spans for position worksheets.	See Chapter 6, "Defining Cash Positions," Setting Up Trees and Positions, page 56.

Page Name	*Navigation*	*Usage*	*Setup Information*
Funds Transfer	Click Funds Transfer.	Access pages to set up and approve funds transfer templates.	See Chapter 9, "Transferring Funds," Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates, page 160.
Bank Integration	Click Bank Integration.	Access pages to define and manage integration information between PeopleSoft and your banks, for your bank statement and payment activities.	See *PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Electronic Banking Using Financial Gateway."
Rates	Click Rates.	Access pages to set up exchange rate, market rates, rate reset codes, and currency/holiday cross-reference information.	See Chapter 2, "Defining Cash Management Processing Options," Defining Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs, page 15. See Chapter 2, "Defining Cash Management Processing Options," Defining Market Rates, page 16.
Accounting	Click Accounting.	Access pages to set up accounting templates and events.	See Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Establishing Accounting Templates, page 225.
Investment Pools	Click Investment Pools.	Access pages to set up and update investment pool and participant information.	See Chapter 11, "Managing Investment Pools," page 201.
Deals and Instrument Types	Click Deals/Instrument Types.	Define deal instruments and templates, and perform deal portfolio activities.	See *PeopleSoft Deal Management 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining Instrument Types and Instrument Templates." See *PeopleSoft Deal Management 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Capturing Deals and Trade Tickets."
Analytics	Click Analytics.	Define risk management analytic functions, calculations, and vendor information.	See *PeopleSoft Risk Management 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Analyzing Risk."
Hedges	Click Hedges.	Set up hedge groups, item sources, and strategies.	See *PeopleSoft Risk Management 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Creating and Maintaining Hedges."

This table lists additional pages used for setting up Cash Management that are not listed in the Treasury Definitions Center page.

Page Name	Navigation	Usage	Setup Information
Installation Options – Treasury	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Install, Installation Options, Treasury	Define integration options for accounting, EnterpriseOne integration, and Financial Gateway functionality.	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Installation Options for PeopleSoft Applications," Defining Treasury Installation Options.
Business Calendar	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Calendars/Schedules, Business Calendar	Indicate business days, nonbusiness days, and holidays for use in Cash Management and Deal Management processing functions.	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining Accounting Calendars," Defining Business Calendars.
Bank Statement Accounting	Banking, Administer Reconciliation, Bank Statement Accounting	Define bank statement accounting match rules. The system searches the bank statement addenda for the transactional text you define, and automatically assigns a default accounting template to the transaction.	See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Reconciliation," Setting Up Cash Management Bank Statement Accounting Functionality.
ChartField Security	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Security, ChartField Security	Set up ChartField security for Treasury components.	See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Securing ChartFields."

Defining Treasury Business Unit Options

You must define default processing options (including VAT) for business units for use in Cash Management, Deal Management, and Risk Management.

Note. All Treasury applications use general ledger business units.

Page Used to Define Treasury Business Unit Options

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Treasury Options	BUS_UNIT_OPT_TR	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options	Set up default processing options specific to your Treasury business units.

Setting Up Treasury Business Unit Options

Access the Treasury Options page (Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options).

Treasury Options page

Default Values

In this region you select workflow processing options for Deal Management and Cash Management. Workflow options specified here work in tandem with various deal settings at deal capture time. The system automatically generates workflow notifications when deals meet certain conditions.

| **Enable WF Deal Preview** (enable workflow deal preview) | Select to enable deal preview workflow processes. The system uses this option to generate workflow notification for three deals workflows (if you have implemented workflow). |

With this option selected, the following workflows are activated when meeting certain conditions:

- When the deal approval status is Submitted this activates the Deal Preapprovals workflow.

- When the Auto Preview flag on the Instrument Detail page is Yes, and the deal status is Not Reviewed, this activates the Review Deal Terms workflow.

- When the Review at Confirmation box is checked on the Instrument Detail page (set to Yes), the deal confirmation review status is Not Reviewed, and the deal status is Open or Sold/Bought back, this activates the Review at Confirmation workflow.

| **Enable WF Auto Confo Worklist** (enable workflow automatic confirmation worklist) | Select to enable automated inbound deal confirmation workflow processes. |

| **Enable WF Invalid Confo Mail** (enable workflow invalid confirmation mail) | Select to enable workflow-based electronic mail processes for invalid or unmatched deal terms found during online confirmation. |

Accounting

| **Calendar ID** | Select a detail calendar for the business unit. |

Note. You must define calendars for business units that you intend to "soft-close" using the Cash Management Fiscal Period Closure functionality.

See Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure, page 249.

Outbound EDI Setup

| **Internal Entity Code** | Select the inbound entity code to use for business units. |

| **External Entity Code** | Select the outbound entity code to use for counterparties. |

Note. Internal and external EDI entity codes enable PeopleSoft EDI Manager to correctly map deal-specific business units and counterparties to EDI data conversion rules.

Base Currency Revaluation

Market Rate Index and **Exchange Rate Type**	Select the appropriate index for each field. The system uses these fields to calculate base currency equivalents for foreign currency amounts when accounting entries are generated from accounting templates.

Bank Transfer Accounting Build

Require Review	Select to force accounting transactions that use this template to be reviewed. The system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template a *Provisional* status. You can then manually finalize the entry on the Review/Approve Entries page. If this check box is deselected, the system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template a *Final* status.
Journal Template	Select the journal template this business unit uses for its bank transfer accounting builds.
BU Doc Sequencing Enabled	Select to activate document sequencing functionality for this business unit's transactions. See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining Document Sequencing."
From Document Type	If using document sequencing, define the document type to be used for assigning a document sequence number to the outbound bank account transfer transaction.
To Document Type	If using document sequencing, define the document type to be used for assigning a document sequence number to the inbound bank account transfer transaction.

Settlement Approvals

Settlement Approvals and **Approval Method**	Select to require approval for settlements involving this business unit. In the Approval Method field, select the type of approval, either *Manual* (manual approvals) or *Workflow* (approvals based on PeopleSoft Workflow).
Same User Select and Approve	Select to enable the same user to both select and approve settlements.

Auto-Schedule Position Update

Auto-Schedule Position Update

You must process a position update request for each deal to create the required records for position management, cash flows, and accounting events for your deals. If you select the check box, the system automatically processes a position update request, which creates the required records for position management and accounting, when you save an active deal. We recommend that you select this check box.

Position Update Run Control ID

Enter the run control ID to use for the automatically created position update requests; for example, enter *AUTO-POSITION*. Specify this run control on the Treasury Options page.

Server Name

Specify the name of the PeopleSoft Process Scheduler server that runs position update request processes. If you leave this field blank, the system uses the Default Operating System field as specified on the System Settings page to determine which server to run the process on.

Hedge Type

Select the accounting method used for the business unit's reporting of hedge and derivative transactions. The options are:

- *Economic / Other Hedge:* Select if using a hedging accounting treatment other than IAS 39 or FAS 133.

- *IAS 39 Hedge:* Complies with the IAS 39 accounting regulations as defined by the International Accounting Standards Committee for financial reporting of derivatives and hedging transactions.

- *FAS 133 Hedge:* Complies with the FAS 133 accounting regulations as defined by the Financial Accounting Standards Board for financial reporting of derivatives and hedging transactions.

Note. A Treasury business unit can comply to only one set of accounting regulations. Treasury does not support multibook accounting.

Treasury VAT Options

Click to access the Treasury BU VAT Options page and specify default VAT options for this business unit. The Treasury VAT Options link is available only if the General Ledger business unit that represents the Treasury Management business unit is linked to a VAT entity.

VAT Defaults

Click to access the VAT Defaults Setup page.

The VAT Defaults Setup page is a common page used to set up VAT defaulting for all PeopleSoft applications processing VAT transactions. On this page you can define Treasury business unit defaults as applicable.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT."

Note. Deals do not appear on the Position Monitor or Position Manager until a position update request is processed. We recommend that you select the Auto-Schedule Position Update check box.

See Also

PeopleSoft Deal Management 9.1 PeopleBook, "Confirming Deals," Deal Review Workflows

PeopleSoft Deal Management 9.1 PeopleBook, "Maintaining Deals"

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler

Defining Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs

To cross reference holiday lists and currency codes, use the Currency Holiday List ID Cross Reference component (CUR_HOL_ID_XREF).

The system uses cross-referenced currency codes and holiday lists to determine eligible business dates for all Treasury business processes.

Pages Used to Define Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference	CUR_HOL_ID_XREF	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Currency/Holiday List X-Ref	Associate a holiday list with a particular currency.

Define Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs

Access the Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference page (Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Currency/Holiday List X-Ref).

Holiday List ID　　　　　　　Associate a holiday list ID with a specified currency code. You can also create additional currency codes and associate holiday list IDs to them.

Defining Market Rates

To define market and exchange codes, use the Market/Exchange Codes component (TRX_EXCHANGE_CD).

In addition to the PeopleSoft Common Definitions pages for defining and maintaining market rate data, Cash Management, Deal Management, and Risk Management use these additional market rate maintenance pages. These market rate pages enable you to specify criteria by which to retrieve and update multiple market rate definitions.

This section discusses how to:

* Define market and exchange code information.

* Define market rates.

* View and add market rate information.

* Edit rate variance information.

* Define rate reset codes.

See Also

PeopleSoft Risk Management 9.1 PeopleBook, "Reevaluating Deals"

Pages Used to Define Market Rates

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Market/Exchange Code	TRX_EXCHANGE_CD	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Market/Exchange Codes	Define market and exchange information for a code.
Market Rates	RT_RATE_TBL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Market Rates	Specify criteria by which to review rates and to add or update rates.
Market Rates - Market Rate	RT_RATE_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Market Rates, Market Rates - Market Rate Click Edit on the Market Rates page.	View details of a market rate, add a new market rate, and view exchange rate detail information. **Note.** To set up history rates for existing market rates, use the component in Set Up Financials/Supply Chain - Common Definitions - Market Rates.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Rate Definition	RT_RATE_DEF_SEC	Click Rate Definition on the Market Rates - Market Rates page.	Edit the maximum variance and error type information.
Exchange Rate Detail	EXCH_RT_DTL	Click the Exchange Rate Detail icon on the Market Rates - Market Rates page.	View exchange rate detail information.
Rate Reset Codes	TRX_RT_RESET_CD	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Rate Reset Codes	Define and associate a holiday list ID to a rate reset code.

Defining Market Rates

Access the Market Rates page (Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Market Rates).

Market Rates page

Note. The appearance of this page varies depending on the market rate category.

Selection Criteria

Enter the criteria by which to retrieve existing market rate definitions.

Term   Specify a term code, indicating the length of time the rate is effective.

Rate Type   Select a market rate or exchange rate type.

From Cur (from currency) and **To Cur** (to currency)   Select the original and conversion currencies of the market rate.

Include History   Select to view market rate history for returned results.

Add New Market Rate   Click to access the Market Rates detail page and add a new rate type. The market rate definition (and, in the case of exchange rates, the currency quotation method for the from currency and to currency) must already exist.

Market Rates

          Click the Edit button to access the Market Rates - Market Rate page, and edit effective date and rate information.

Note. To set up history rates for existing market rates, use the component in Set Up Financials/Supply Chain - Common Definitions - Market Rates.

          Click the Rate Defn (rate definition) button to access the Rate Definition page, and view information on the rate's maximum variance, error type, and day count basis.

          Click the Rate Detail button to access the Exchange Rate Detail page, and view exchange rate detail information.

Viewing and Adding Market Rate Information

Access the Market Rates - Market Rate page (Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Market Rates, Market Rate).

Market Rates - Market Rate page

Rate Definition	Click to access the Rate Definition page, and edit variance and error type information for the rate definition.
🔢	Click the Exchange Rate Detail button to access the Exchange Rate Detail page, and view rate information.

Note. To use this page to add or change past rates, use the navigation: Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Market Rates, Market Rates. You must be in the correction mode to make changes to historical data.

See Also

PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook, "Processing Multiple Currencies," Defining Market Rates

Editing Rate Variance Information

Access the Rate Definition page (Click Rate Definition on the Market Rates - Market Rates page).

Maximum Variance   The variance value validates the rates read from the market rate loader
                              process. The system compares the prior historical rate to the one read and
                              ensures that it's within a specified variance. If not, you are alerted with the
                              specified error type. Enter a new Maximum Variance, and specify an Error
                              Type of *None,Stop,* or *Warning.*

Securing ChartFields for PeopleSoft Treasury

PeopleSoft ChartField security provides a flexible, rule-based approach to administer security at a data level.
ChartField security is supported in PeopleSoft Treasury and across other PeopleSoft Financials and Supply
Chain Management (FSCM) applications. The ChartField security feature prevents unauthorized employees
and contractors from viewing and editing sensitive financial data by restricting access to data stored with
specific ChartField values.

The primary features for ChartField security are:

*   Enforce security rules by user, role, or permission list.

*   Enable ChartField security for all products or selectively by product.

*   Enable or disable ChartField security selectively by component.

*   Define rules to accommodate end-user areas of responsibility.

*   Refine access rules by product feature or component.

*   Support super user access to minimize setup.

*   Define components as exceptions to override security rules.

For more information, see the *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals PeopleBook*:

See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Securing ChartFields."

See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Securing ChartFields," Securing ChartFields for
PeopleSoft Treasury.

Integrating PeopleSoft Treasury with JD Edwards General Accounting

This integration provides users of JD Edwards General Ledger access to the robust PeopleSoft Treasury
functionality contained in Cash, Deal, and Risk Management applications. The integration includes:

*   Transmitting market rates from the JD Edwards to the PeopleSoft system.

- Transmitting accounting entry lines from Treasury products to the JD Edwards General Accounting ledger.

- Transmitting banks statement data to the JD Edwards General Accounting ledger.

- Generating a cash position worksheet (CPW) in PeopleSoft Cash Management from accounting data imported from the JD Edwards system.

  With the exception of the cash position worksheet functionality, data integration is accomplished through the use of Integration Broker and specific XML messages. The data integration required to generate a cash position worksheet is accomplished using the JDBJ Java API to access the JD Edwards database directly.

Refer to the following documents for instruction on setting up and configuring the PeopleSoft Treasury to JD Edwards General Accounting integration.

See Also

JD Edwards Application Integrations with PeopleSoft Applications

PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Installation Options for PeopleSoft Applications," Defining Treasury Installation Options

Chapter 3

Navigating in Treasury Management

This chapter discusses how to navigate in Treasury Management.

Navigating in Treasury Management

Treasury Management provides custom navigation pages that contain groupings of folders that support a specific business process, task, or user role.

Note. In addition to the Treasury Management custom navigation pages, PeopleSoft provides menu navigation and standard navigation pages.

Note. The Treasury Management Processing Center and the Treasury Management Setup Center are individual navigation center pages that can also be accessed from the main Treasury Management Center. As they are already documented below as a navigation center page, they are not included in the Treasury Management Center linked page listing.

See Also

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Applications User's Guide

Pages Used to Navigate in Treasury Management

This table lists the Custom Navigation pages that are used to navigate in Treasury Management:

Page Name	Navigation	Usage
Treasury Management Center	Treasury Management Center	Access primary Treasury Management setup and process pages from a central location. For easier retrieval, you can save this page in the My Favorites folder on the portal navigation menu.
Accounting Summary	Click the Accounting Summary link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Accounting Summary page to search accounting information and review results, displayed by accounting event line.

Page Name	Navigation	Usage
Bank Account Manager	Click the Bank Account Manager link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Bank Account Manager page to review and manage bank account information by functional clusters.
Collateral Summary	Click the Collateral Summary link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Collateral Summary page to search for collateral items and return results.
Hedge Group Manager	Click the Hedge Group Manager link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Hedge Group Manager page to combine various hedges into collections of "favorites."
Letters of Credit Summary	Click the Letters of Credit Summar link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Letters of Credit Summary page to review summarized information for multiple letters of credit.
Portfolio Manager	Click the Portfolio Manager link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Portfolio Manager page to combine various deals into portfolio collections.
Position Manager	Click the Position Manager link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Position Manager page to create and manage position worksheets from one central location.
Reconciliation Manager	Click the Reconciliation Manager link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Reconciliation Manager page to reconcile bank data and manage exceptions from one central location.
Settlement Manager	Click the Settlement Manager link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Settlement Manager page to view settlement and exposure information and manage treasury payments from a central location.
Treasury Definitions Center	Click the Treasury Definitions Center link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access pages to configure Treasury Management.
Treasury Processing Center	Click the Treasury Processing Center link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access common Treasury Management business process pages from a central location. For easier retrieval, you can save this page in the My Favorites folder on the portal navigation menu.

Chapter 4

Managing Facilities

This chapter provides an overview of facilities and discusses how to:

* Define facilities

* Monitor facilities

Note. Line of Credit and Commercial Paper facilities are covered in the Deal Management PeopleBook.

Understanding Facilities

A *facility* is a financial arrangement with a counterparty under which an established monetary amount is available for transacting deals. Similar to a contract, a facility contains pertinent information about the arrangement, such as default settlement instructions, term, review dates, and an expiration date.

With PeopleSoft banking functionality you can define facilities, associate fees to a facility, and periodically run the Monitor Expiring Facilities process (TR_FCLTY_RVW) to evaluate which of your organization's facilities are close to expiring.

Facility Review Workflow

If you have implemented the Facility Review workflow, when you run the Monitor Expiring Facilities process (TR_FCLTY_RVW), the system automatically routes expiring facilities to a defined user's worklist.

See Also

Prerequisites

Before defining facilities you must define:

* Counterparties

* Settlement instructions

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up Counterparties"

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining Beneficiary Bank EFT Options

Defining Facilities

To define facilities information, use the following components:

• Facilities component (FCLTY_DFN).

• Facility Memo Attributes component (FCLTY_MEMO_ATTR).

Use the TR_FCLTY_BCI component interface to load data into the facilities tables.

To set up a facility, you define the types of attributes tracked and then establish the facility itself. You record fees that are associated with the facility by entering them online.

Note. You must define fee codes on the Fee Codes page prior to entering fees online.

This section discusses how to:

• Define facility memo types

• Establish facilities

• Create fee entries

See Also

Chapter 5, "Managing Fees and Account Analysis," Defining Fee Codes, page 34

Chapter 5, "Managing Fees and Account Analysis," Creating Fee Entries, page 52

Pages Used to Define Facilities

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Navigation*	*Usage*
Facility Definition	FCLTY_PNL1	Cash Management, Facilities, Facility Definition	Define a facility.
Memo Attributes	FCLTY_CD	Cash Management, Facilities, Facility Memo Attributes	Define the attributes to track with a facility and define the type of data that the attributes contain.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Enter Fees	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Click the Fees link on the Facility Definition page.	Create fees for a facility.
Financial Contacts	TR_CONTACT_PNL	Click the Contact Information link on the Facility Definition page.	Edit information for a financial institution contact assigned to a facility.
Comments	FCLTY_LONG_SP	Click the Expand Long button on the Facilities page.	Edit memorandum information for a facility attribute.
Settlement Instructions	STL_INSTR_SP	Click the View Settlement Instruction button on the Facility Definition page.	View details of a specified settlement instruction for a facility.

Defining Facility Memo Types

Access the Memo Attributes page (Cash Management, Facilities, Facility Memo Attributes).

Data Type
Provide an attribute description and indicate its data type. Online edits validate the data type when you associate the attributes with a facility. Select from:

Date: Use for dates.

Long: Use for storing an unlimited number of characters.

Number: Use for positive numeric data.

Signed Num (signed number): Use for storing positive and negative numbers.

Text: Use for storing text attributes based on a database field. When you select this option, you can optionally specify a prompt table. This limits text entries to a list of values that are generated from the specified table. For example, using the prompt table INSTR_HEADER_TR limits entries to defined instruments.

Note. You must include Comments (CMTS) as a defined attribute for the Memo Attributes page to function correctly. CMTS is included in the system database; do not delete it.

Establishing Facilities

Access the Facility Definition page (Cash Management, Facilities, Facility Definition).

Facility Definition page

Note. Since facilities are generally associated with a particular counterparty, you may want to incorporate the counterparty code in the Facility ID field so that it's easy to distinguish between facilities.

Facility Definition

Counterparty	Select the associated counterparty. For facilities that do not have specific counterparties, such as commercial paper, select the Facility has no Counterparty check box, which disables the Counterparty field.
Review Date	Enter the date the facility will be up for review. This is the date that the role names specified in the Facility Review grid receive PeopleSoft Workflow notification.
Expiration Date	Enter the date the facility is scheduled to expire.
Fees	Click to record fees associated with the facility.

Facilities Contacts

Contact	Enter the ID number. The name, contact title, and phone number are automatically populated from the Financial Contacts page.

Contact Information	Click the to view and edit the Financial Contacts page.

Facilities Memos

Facility Attributes	The COMMENTS attribute automatically appears; enter information about the facility in the Value field.
	Click the Expand Long button to view the entire Value description.

Override Settlement Instructions

Indicate how funds should be settled for transactions using this facility.

Deal Override	Select to permit these instructions to be overridden at deal entry.
Instructions	Specify settlement instructions, which are defined on the External Accounts - Settlements Instructions page.
	Click the View Settlement Instruction button to view settlement instruction details.

Facility Review

Role Name	Select the role name that receives PeopleSoft Workflow notification when the facility is up for review.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up Counterparties," Defining Settlement Instructions for Counterparty Deals

Monitoring Facilities

Run the Monitor Expiring Facilities Application Engine process (TR_FCLTY_RVW) to determine if your facilities are close to expiring.

Pages Used to Monitor Facilities

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Schedule Facility Review	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, Facilities, Schedule Facility Review	Define run parameters for the Monitor Expiring Facilities process.
Facilities by Counterparty	BANK_PNLFCLTY	Cash Management, Facilities, Facilities by Counterparty	Review facilities summary information by counterparty.

Monitoring Facilities

Access the Schedule Facility Review page (Cash Management, Facilities, Schedule Facility Review).

Schedule Facility Review page

Bind Variable Name   In the Parameters grid is an Application Engine run control function that enables you to specify the variable for which you are setting the value. Select the Bind Variable Name of *FCLTY ID,* and enter the specific facility name to be calculated in Value. You can add records and specify as many bind variable names as are pertinent to the job.

Chapter 5

Managing Fees and Account Analysis

This chapter provides an overview of bank fees and account analysis and describes how to:

- Set up fee structures.

- Compare fee structures.

- Perform account analysis.

- Use the Account Analysis Manager.

- Create fee entries.

Understanding Managing Fees and Account Analysis

With the Account Analysis feature, you can configure fee codes and fee structures for use in bank fee comparisons and statement analyses.

Account analysis enables you to define how bank fees are calculated for your enterprise and organizes them into fee structures. A fee structure enables you to group, in one place, all the fees that a particular bank charges. You can use fee types that match the standards documented in *Treasury Management Association (TMA) Guide to Account Analysis and Service Codes,* published by the Association for Financial Professionals (AFP). Examples of fee types are tiered pricing, base fee, and minimum/maximum fees.

By defining and analyzing the data, you can reduce your fee expenses in two ways:

- Comparing fees for up to five banks, and determining which bank has the best fee structure for your requirements.

- Catching bank charge errors by comparing an EDI 822 Account Analysis bank statement against the data.
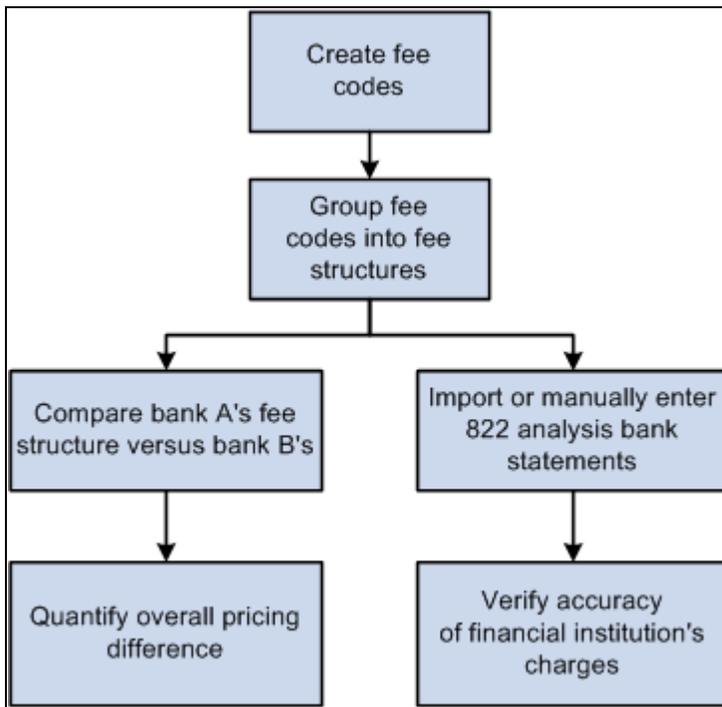
Overview of bank account fee analysis

Common Elements in This Chapter

Analysis Start Date and **Analysis End Date**	Defines the calendar period that the system analyzes. When running an account analysis, the system includes all the activities between these two dates in the analysis.
Bank Code	Displays the identifier code for a specific bank.
Fee Code	Displays the identifier code for a specific fee.
Fee Structure Code	Displays the identifier code for a specific fee structure.
Period Beginning and **Period Ending**	Defines the beginning and ending dates for a specified time period.

Day Count Basis   Select from the following options:

- *30/360:* Assumes that a year consists of twelve months with an equal length of 30 days. A special rule applies when dealing with the end of a month.

- *30E/360:* Assumes that a year consists of twelve months with an equal length of 30 days. Also known as Euro 30/360.

- *Actual/360:* Assumes that a year consists of 360 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days.

- *Actual/365:* Assumes that a year consists of 365 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days.

- *Actual/Actual:* Assumes that the number of days between two dates is the actual number of calendar days.

Setting Up Fee Structures

To define fee codes, use the Fee Codes component (DEFINE_FEE_CODE).

This section discusses how to:

1. Create fee transaction tables.

2. Define fee codes.

3. (Optional) Enter SQL Where Criteria.

4. Set up fee structures.

5. Define fee structures.

6. (Optional) Edit base fee calculations.

Pages Used to Set Up Fee Structure

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Fee Transaction Tables	FA_FEE_TRAN_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Transaction Tables	Set up transaction tables.
Fee Codes	FA_FEE_CD_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes, Fee Codes	Set up fee codes.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
SQL Where Criteria	FA_FEE_SQLWHERE_SP	Click the Where Clause button on the Fee Codes page.	Establish criteria for the fee analysis metric.
Fee Structures - Structure Accounts	FA_FEE_ACCT	Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures	Set up fee structures.
Fee Structures - Structure Definition	FA_FEE_STRUCT	Select the Structure Definition tab on the Structure Accounts page.	Define fee structures.
Fee Calculation Type - Fee Structure	FA_FEE_STRUCT_SEC	Click Fee Definition on the Fee Structure Definition page.	Edit the base fee calculation for certain fee calculation types.

Creating Fee Transaction Tables

Access the Fee Transaction Tables page (Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Transaction Tables).

Define the names of the transaction tables that you will use with your fee codes. The transaction tables contain the underlying transactions, which the system references when processing fees. After you save the transaction tables, you can reference the table when you define each fee code.

Defining Fee Codes

Access the Fee Codes definition page (Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes).

Fee Codes definition page

Description	Create both a description and fee code and that matches the TMA TS 822 or that matches your financial counterparty account analysis standards.
Code Seq Num (code sequence number)	Assign a fee code to determine the order in which the fee codes appear on your account analysis screens.

Fee Type

Specify whether this fee type applies to transactions involving a Letter of Credit, Deal Fee, Facility Fee, or EFT Fee. You can select multiple options.

Fee Analysis Metric SQL

Define how the fee metrics will be tracked in your system.

Fee Validation Information	If the fee can be tracked in your system, select the check box. In certain circumstances, you may not want to validate all fees. In this case, leave the check box deselect.
Transaction Table	Reference the fee validation information to a fee transaction table (defined in the prior section). After you save this value, click the Transaction Tables button to view the specific table definition.
Transaction Date Field	Select the date type field name used to determine the fee (for example, *ACCOUNTING_DT* = accounting date).

| **Aggregate Type** | Select *Count, Avg* (average), *Min* (minimum), *Max* (maximum), or *Sum*. The available aggregate fields to which the aggregate parameters can be applied are prompted for you from the selected transaction table. |

After selecting the Aggregate Field, click the Where Clause button to select operators and describe the value that the Aggregate Field must match.

Accounting Treatment

Define how the accounting process handles bank fees.

| **Account for Fee** | Selecting this check box determines if a fee may be expensed or amortized. If a fee is amortized, accounting templates for booking the fee and amortization of the fee are required. If a fee is expensed, it may not be amortized and only the template for booking the expense is required. |

| **Interest Basis Override** | Fees may be amortized or accrued on various day count basis. Select this check box to enable modification of the Day Count Basis type on the Enter Fees page when creating a fee. If not selected, the Day Count Basis type on the Enter Fees page automatically defaults to the fee set up information, and cannot be modified. |

| **Override Template on Fee Panel** | Select this check box to allow editing of the Template field on the Enter Fees page. |

| **VAT Applicable Fee** | If this fee code is VAT applicable, select the check box, and specify the appropriate Expense Template. All VAT transactions recorded in Treasury Management are assumed to be transactions on services, not transactions on goods. When you create a VAT-applicable fee, the Physical Nature field displays *Services*. |

Day Count Basis	Select from the following:

- *30/360:* Assumes that a year consists of 12 months with an equal length of 30 days. A special rule applies when dealing with the end of a month.

- *30E/360:* Assumes that a year consists of 12 months with an equal length of 30 days. Also known as Euro 30/360.

  > **Note.** The difference between the *30/360* calculation and the *30E/360* calculation occurs when a period ends on the 31st, but did not start on the 30th or 31st. In this case, the *30/360* calculation uses the 31st day as equal to 31, while the *30E/360* calculation uses the 31st day as equal to 30. For example, using the *30/360* calculation, the period starting December 1 and ending December 31 contains 30 days. However, using the *30E/360* calculation, the same December time period contains only 29 days.

- *Actual/360:* Assumes that a year consists of 360 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days.

- *Actual/365:* Assumes that a year consists of 365 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days.

- *Actual/Actual:* Assumes that the number of days between two dates is the actual number of calendar days.

Amortized	If you opt to amortize the fee over time, select both an Expense Template and Accrual Template.
Expensed	If you opt to only expense the fee, select an appropriate expense template value.

See Also

Entering SQL Where Criteria

Access the SQL Where Criteria page (click the Where Clause button on the Fee Codes page).

Select operators and describe the *Value* that the Aggregate Field must match to pass the fee analysis. When you enter multiple criteria lines, a logical *and* is implied.

Setting Up Fee Structures

Access the Fee Structures - Structure Accounts page (Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures, Structure Accounts).

Fee Structures - Structure Accounts page

There two components to a fee structure:

• Account information. Each structure is defined according to the bank and the account to which the fee structure will be charged.

• Accounts in the fee structure, and their associated currency.

Fee Structure Accounts

Charge to Bank Account   Select a bank account to record any fees charged to this fee structure.

Accounts in Fee Structure

Enter the bank account or accounts that are associated with a particular fee structure.

Defining Fee Structures

Access the Fee Structures - Structure Definition page (Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures, Structure Definition).

Structure Accounts	Structure Definition					

SetID: SHARE   Bank Code: USBNK   Fee Structure: USFEE

Account Information   Find | View All First ◀ 1 of 1 ▶ Last

Effective Date: 07/01/2000   Status as of Effective Date: Active

Fee Structures Definition   Customize | Find | View All | ↗ | ▦   First ◀ 1-4 of 4 ▶ Last

Fee Code	Description	*Fee Calculation Type	Fee Definition	Validate Fee		
010000 🔍	DDA Maint	Flat Fee ▼	Fee Definition	☑	＋	−
250102 🔍	ACH Originated-Debit/Credit	Minimum Fee ▼	Fee Definition	☑	＋	−
350104 🔍	Out Fedwire-Auto-Freeform	Tiered Price ▼	Fee Definition	☑	＋	−
350300 🔍	Incoming Fedwire Trnsf	Maximum Fee ▼	Fee Definition	☑	＋	−

Fee Structures - Structure Definition page

Fee Calculation Type	Select one of the following values:

- *Base Fee:* Fee that is charged in addition to the unit price when one or more units of the service are provided. For example, a base fee of USD 10.00 is charged, plus USD 0.50 per unit.

- *Flat Fee:* Fixed fee that is charged for service provided that is not directly tied to the volume of the service. For example, Balance Reporting is USD 50.00 per month, regardless of the number or reporting files created during the month.

- *Minimum Fee:* Lowest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit with a USD 5.00 minimum. The minimum fee is charged even if the unit count is less than 5.

- *Maximum Fee:* Highest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit, with a USD 50.00 maximum. The maximum fee is charged even if the unit count exceeds 50.

- *Rate Based Charge:* This fee is calculated using a balance and an annual percentage rate. For example, an overdraft fee is calculated as the Average Negative Ledger Balance x 12% x 30/365.

- *Discounted Price:* This fee is calculated using a price that is less than the standard price for the service provided. For example, Customer A is charged USD 0.90 per unit, instead of the standard USD 1.00 per unit.

- *Threshold Price*: The total volume determines the unit price for the service. For example, if the volume is 1,000 or less, the price is USD 0.10 per unit; if the volume is more than 1,000, the price is USD 0.09 per unit.

- *Tiered Pricing:* The price for the service is determined by the tiering structure and the total volume. The volume is broken down into as many tiers as necessary, and a different price is used to calculate the fee for each tier. For example, for the first 1,000 items, the price is USD .10 per unit; for more than 1,000 items, the price is USD .09 per unit.

Fee Definition	Depending on the Fee Calculation Type, you can click to further define the metrics of the fee on the Fee Structure page.
Validate Fee	Select this check box to validate the particular fee code against both the cost and volume as defined in the fee structure and the volume as defined in the fee code setup and fee transaction tables.

Editing Base Fee Calculations

Access the Fee Calculation Type − Fee Structure page (click Fee Definition on the Fee Structure Definition page).

The fee calculation type must have an editable fee definition to access this page. Enter a new base fee, expressed as a decimal, for fee calculation.

Comparing Fee Structures

This section discusses how to compare fee structures.

Use these pages in this section to compare them with each other and to analyze the results. You can compare as few as two or as many as five fee structures at one time. You can also create multiple comparison scenarios and save them for future use. If the underlying structure changes, you can rerun the saved comparison and view the new results.

Pages Used to Compare Fee Structures

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Navigation*	*Usage*
Fee Structure Comparison	FA_CHARGE_COMP	Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structure Comparison	Compare different fee structures that are applied to the same account, and also create and save multiple comparison scenarios for future use
Fee Structure Comparison Results	FA_CHARGE_RSLTS	Click Compare Fee Structures on the Fee Structure Comparison page.	Analyze fee structures' comparison. The page also displays the optimal fee structure choice.

Comparing Fee Structures

Access the Fee Structure Comparison page (Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structure Comparison).

To compare fee structures:

1. Enter up to five Fee Structure Codes for comparison in the Fee Structures group box.

2. Click Compare Fee Structures.

3. The Fee Structure Comparison Results page appears. Each fee structure you selected on the Fee Structure Comparison page is calculated and displayed. The fee structure of optimal choice, based on the comparison of fees, is identified to the right of the *Guide to Account Analysis* field. A Charge Difference column appears on the page only if you are comparing two fee structures.

Performing Account Analysis

This section discusses how to:

• Manually create statements.

• Automatically import statement information.

- Validate account analysis information.

Once bank fee codes and structures have been set up, you can perform account analysis on your bank statements to verify fee charges and catch potential errors. EDI 822 statements can be entered either manually or automatically imported using PeopleSoft banking functionality. You use the Account Analysis pages to enter bank statement balance, service, and rate information, as well as balance adjustments and service adjustments, where necessary. After entering a statement, you can validate that statement to ensure correct volumes, balances, and charges. This should help decrease your research time into statement exceptions.

See Also

PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up Electronic Banking Using Financial Gateway"

Common Elements in This Section

Adjustment Date	Displays the balance adjustment or service charge adjustment entry date.
Fee Code	Displays the identifier code for the specified fee.
Pay Method	If you leave the Pay Method field blank, the system applies the charge to the balance compensable service charges.

- *F:* Free (no charge)

- *N:* Non balance compensable

- *W:* Waived

- *X:* Not assessed through analysis

Service Charge or **Service Charge Amount**	Displays the service charges assessed to your account by the bank.

Pages Used to Perform Account Analysis

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Fee Statements - Information	FA_BNK_STMT_HDR	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements Select the Information tab.	Enter statement and analysis date information, and select a statement method. You can also view bank contacts.
Fee Statements - Rates	FA_BNK_STMT_RATE	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements Select the Rates tab.	Enter rate information for statement fee codes

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Fee Statements - Balance Compensation	FA_BNK_STMT_ANYL	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements Select the Balance Compensation tab.	Enter balances, earnings and other totals.
Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments	FA_BNK_STMT_BADJ	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements Select the Balance Adjustments tab.	Enter balance adjustment information.
Fee Statements - Service Charges	FA_BNK_STMT_SRVC	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements Select the Service Charges tab.	Enter statement service charge information.
Fee Statements - Service Adjustments	FA_BNK_STMT_SADJ	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements Select the Service Adjustments tab.	Enter adjustments to service charges found on the bank account analysis statement.
Import Bank Statements	BSP_IMPORT	• Banking, Bank Statements, Import Bank Statements • Click Import Bank Statements on the Account Analysis Manager page.	Submit an electronic request for bank statement information.
Account Analysis Validation	FA_BNK_STMT_VALID	Banking, Account Analysis, Account Analysis Validation	Validate a statement against a fee structure.

Creating Statements Manually

This section discusses how to manually create statements:

1. Enter general statement information.

2. Enter statement rate information.

3. Enter balance compensation information.

4. Enter balance adjustment information.

5. Enter service charge information.

6. Enter service adjustment information.

Entering General Statement Information

Access the Fee Statements - Information page (Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Information).

Fee Statements - Information page

Statement Date	Enter the date the statement is created or imported.
Settlement Method	Select *Debit* or *Invoice.*

Bank Contacts

This information is associated with the Bank ID and Account #. The fields display the information you entered on the Financial Contacts page.

Entering Statement Rate Information

Access the Fee Statements - Rates page (Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Rates).

Fee Statements - Rates page

Rate Date	Enter the effective date for the Rate.
Rate	Enter a rate in decimal format. Rates can be any type, such as earnings rates for the current and next period, or reserve rates.
Multiplier	Specify a service multiplier, in decimal format.
Days/Period	Enter the number of days in the analysis period, generally *30* or *31*.
Days/Year	Enter the number of days in the year, generally *365* or *366*.

Entering Balance Compensation Information

Access the Fee Statements - Balance Compensation page (Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Balance Compensation).

Fee Statements - Balance Compensation page

You enter balances, earnings allowance, and service charge summary information for a specified account on this page.

Balance Amount	Enter the final balance amount for the indicated Fee Code from the 822 Statement.

Entering Balance Adjustment Information

Access the Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments page (Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Balance Adjustments).

Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments page

You can correct balance information for a specific account number.

Transaction Amount	Enter the adjustment transaction amount.
Days	Indicates the number of days the balance adjustment is outstanding. For example, 10,000 USD for five days.
Rate	Displays the adjustment rate expressed as a decimal.
Earnings allow Adjustment	Enter the actual dollar amount being charged or reimbursed to the account by the bank.

Entering Service Charge Information

Access the Fee Statements - Service Charges page (Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Service Charges).

Fee Code	Description	Fee Ref ID	Price ID	Unit Price	Count	Service Charge	Currency	Balance Equivalent	Pay Method		
010000	DDA Maint		B	145.00000	1	145.00	USD	42,798.20		+	−
100000	Brnch Dep		T	0.75000	1000	750.00	USD	221,370.00		+	−
150100	Checks Pd-Reg		T	0.03000	100	3.00	USD	885.48		+	−
250102	ACH Originated-Debit/Credit		T	0.16000	22	3.52	USD	1,038.96		+	−
350104	Out Fedwire-Auto-Freeform		T	4.50000	5	22.50	USD	4,427.40		+	−
350300	Incoming Fedwire Trnsf		T	3.50000	7	24.50	USD	7,231.42		+	−

Information | Rates | Balance Compensation | Balance Adjustments | Service Charges | Service Adjustments

Bank ID: 121042882   Account #: 0741-256458

Analysis ID: FA00000004   Load Date/Time: 03/13/01 7:54:38AM

Service Information   Customize | Find | View All | First 1-6 of 6 Last

Fee Statements - Service Charges page

Enter service charges from the bank account analysis statement on this page.

Price ID	Refers to the fee calculation type. Select from the following:

- *B* (Base Fee): Fee that is charged in addition to the unit price when one or more units of the service are provided. For example, a base fee of USD 10.00 is charged, plus USD 0.50 per unit.

- *F* (Flat Fee): Fixed fee that is charged for service provided that is not directly tied to the volume of the service. For example, balance reporting is USD 50.00 per month, regardless of the number or reporting files created during the month.

- *M* (Minimum Fee): Lowest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit with a USD 5.00 minimum. The minimum fee is charged even if the unit count is less than 5.

- *X* (Maximum Fee): Highest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit, with a USD 50.00 maximum. The maximum fee is charged even if the unit count exceeds 50.

- *R* (Rate Based Charge): This fee is calculated using a balance and an annual percentage rate. For example, an overdraft fee is calculated as the average negative ledger balance x 12% x 30/365.

- *D* (Discounted Price): This fee is calculated using a price that is less than the standard price for the service provided. For example, customer A is charged USD 0.90 per unit, instead of the standard USD 1.00 per unit.

- *H* (Threshold Price): The total volume determines the unit price for the service. For example, if the volume is 1,000 or less, the price is USD 0.10 per unit; if the volume is more than 1,000, the price is USD 0.09 per unit.

- *T* (Tiered Pricing): The price for the service is determined by the tiering structure and the total volume. The volume is broken down into as many tiers as necessary, and a different price is used to calculate the fee for each tier. For example, for the first 1,000 items, the price is USD .10 per unit; for more than 1,000 items, the price is USD .09 per unit.

Unit Price	Enter the unit price per fee item.
Count	Enter the number of statement items for each fee code.
Balance Equivalent	Enter the account's balance equivalent, as defined by the bank.

Note. If you use *Flat Fee* for the Price ID, the service charge equals the unit price. If you want the service charge to equal the unit price multiplied by the count, you must use *Tiered Price* for the Price ID.

Entering Service Adjustment Information

Access the Fee Statements - Service Adjustments page (Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Service Adjustments).

| Information | Rates | Balance Compensation | Balance Adjustments | Service Charges | Service Adjustments |

| Bank ID: | 121042882 | | Account #: | 0741-256458 |
| Analysis ID: | FA00000004 | | Load Date/Time: | 03/13/01 7:54:38AM |

Service Adjustments   Customize | Find | View All | 🗗 | 🏢 First ◀ 1-2 of 2 ▶ Last

Bank Account Number	Description	As of Date	Adjustment Date	Service Charge Amount	Currency	Pay Method		
0741-256458	Coin Bags	08/01/2000	08/01/2000	23.00	USD 🔍	🔍	➕	➖
0741-256458	EFT Maintenance Fee	07/31/2000	07/31/2000	200.00	USD 🔍	🔍	➕	➖

Fee Statements - Service Adjustments page

Use this page to apply any adjustments to service charges found on the bank account analysis statement.

Payment Method   Select from the following options:

- *B:* Compensation by balance.

- *D:* Debited hard charged.

- *F:* Free (No charge.)

- *I:* Invoiced Separately

- *N:* Nonbalance compensable.

- *P:* Previously charged.

- *W:* Waived

- *X:* Not assessed through analysis.

Automatically Importing Statement Information

Use PeopleSoft banking functionality to automatically import bank statement data from your financial institution to the account analysis application tables. Once the data are in the system, you can view and edit statement information on the Fee Statements - Balance Adjustment and Fee Statements - Service Adjustment pages.

See Also

Chapter 5, "Managing Fees and Account Analysis," Entering Service Charge Information, page 46

PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up Electronic Banking Using Financial Gateway"

PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook, "Processing Bank Statements in Financial Gateway"

Validating Account Analysis Information

Access the Account Analysis Validation page (Banking, Account Analysis, Account Analysis Validation).

Account Analysis Validation

| Bank ID: | 121042882 | | Account #: | 0741-256458 | | | Analysis ID: | FA00000004 |

Fee Structure Code: CHCK3

Statement Date: 07/31/2000

Validate

Fee Exceptions — Customize | Find | View All | | | First ◄ 1-5 of 8 ► Last

Fee Code	Description	Bank Item Count	Item Count	Bank Service Charge	Computed Charge	Currency	Count Variance	Charge Variance
000000	Ledger Bal-Avg Net			295,000.00		USD		295,000.00
000010	Collected Bal-Avg Net			250,000.00		USD		250,000.00
010000	DDA Maint	1		145.00	100.00	USD	1	45.00
100000	Brnch Dep	1000		750.00		USD	1000	750.00
150100	Checks Pd-Reg	100		3.00		USD	100	3.00

Account Analysis Validation page

Fee Structure Code	Select a fee structure code and click the Validate button. All exceptions, where the system does not match your bank statement, display in the Fee Exceptions grid. The types of exceptions appear according to column heading. The grid will indicate what type of exception was encountered and the amount of the discrepancy
Count Variance	Displays the difference between the Bank Item Count and your organization's Item Count.

Using the Account Analysis Manager

This section discusses using the Account Analysis Manager. You can examine your fee activity on an ad hoc basis for particular fee structures, for historical or current information.

Page Used for the Account Analysis Manager

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Account Analysis Manager	FA_STMT_INQ_PNL	Banking, Account Analysis, Account Analysis Manager	Review fee activity on an ad hoc basis and perform other bank fee and account analysis tasks from a central location.

Using the Account Analysis Manager

Access the Account Analysis Manager page (Banking, Account Analysis, Account Analysis Manager).

Account Analysis Manager

Account Analysis Criteria			
SetID:	SHARE 🔍	Bank Code:	USBNK 🔍
Fee Structure Code:	CHCK3 ▾	US Checking Fee Structure 3	
Period Beginning:	02/01/2000 📅	Period Ending: 02/28/2000 📅	Search
Total Charges:	190.00	Currency: USD	

Account Analysis Activity					Customize | Find | View All | 🔲 📊 First ◀ 1-3 of 3 ▶ Last
Account	Fee Code	Fee Description	Item Count	Calculated Service Charge	Currency
CHCK	010000	DDA Maint	0	100.00	USD
CHCK	250102	ACH Originated-Debit/Credit	2	40.00	USD
CHCK	350104	Out Fedwire-Auto-Freeform	0	50.00	USD

Validate Statement   Compare Fees   Edit Analysis Statement   Import Statement

Account Analysis Manager page

Your search results appear in the Account Analysis Activity grid.

Validate Statement	Click to access the Account Analysis Validation page and validate account analysis.
Compare Fees	Click to access the Fee Structure page and compare two to five fee structures.
Edit Analysis Statement	Click to access the Enter Fee Statements page and modify a specific account analysis statement.
Load Analysis Statement	Click to access the Import Bank Statement page and request electronic transmission of bank statement information.

See Also

Creating Fee Entries

This section discusses how to:

- Create fee entries.

- Create external transactions fee entries.

After establishing fee codes and structures, you can create fee entries for both delivered PeopleSoft fee sources and miscellaneous fee entries to track these expenditures. In addition, if you have enabled VAT (value-added tax) processing in Treasury Management, the system automatically calculates, processes, and tracks VAT amounts for VAT−applicable fee entries.

See Also

Pages Used to Create Fee Entries

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Enter Fees	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Fees	Create fees for deal, facility, EFT, and letter of credit sources.

Creating Fee Entries

Access the Enter Fees page (Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Fees).

Enter Fees page

Fee Information

VAT	Click the link to access the VAT Transactions Details page. The system performs an audit, checking that the business unit of the Bank Code is VAT enabled, and the Fee Code is configured for VAT and associated with a VAT applicable accounting template. The VAT Transactions Details page displays only if these conditions are met.

Payment Information

Trans Date (transaction date)	Enter the actual transaction date of the fee entry. The system automatically populates this field with the system date.
Payment Date	Enter the specified payment date of the fee entry.
Pay Fee	Select to pay the fee. Also select a Payment Method.
Instructions (settlement instructions)	Select settlement instructions for processing the fee entry payment.

Expense Template   Select an accounting template to record this fee entry as an expense.

Accrual Details

Period Start and **Period End**   Enter the beginning and ending dates of the accrual period.

Accrual Template   Specify the accounting template to record the accrual amount for this fee
                                         entry.

Position Details

As the fee is processed through the system, you can view accrual details.

Cash Flow

As the fee is processed through the system, you can view approval and payment details.

See Also

Chapter 6

Defining Cash Positions

This chapter provides an overview of trees and cash positions and discusses how to:

- Set up trees and positions.

- Manage position worksheets.

- Create intraday bank reporting worksheets.

- Create cash position worksheet (CPW) data manually.

- Generate Cash Management position reports.

Understanding Trees and Cash Positions

This PeopleSoft application provides a tool for managing your treasury organization's positions. Using PeopleSoft Tree Manager, you can define hierarchical structures that describe the specific information that is important for your organization. You can use these trees for risk analysis, cash management, position management, deal validation, limit analysis, and any other functions that you deem applicable.

Position trees are used in Treasury Management for many purposes, including:

- Cash position analysis

- Deal validation

- Limit checking

In Treasury Management, a *position* is the total financial value of a particular set of transactions that are performed on behalf of an enterprise. A *cash position* analyzes cash flows to determine the amount of cash that is available at a particular time.

Think of a position as a way of categorizing the entire PeopleSoft enterprise transaction database into subgroups, or sources, with totals. Using Tree Manager and PeopleSoft online pages, you can depict the hierarchy for a position (using tree nodes), specify the data sources to include, and define which fields to sum to provide the total for a particular position.

See Also

PeopleSoft Risk Management 9.1 PeopleBook, "Managing Position Limits"

Common Elements Used in This Chapter

Alias Name	Enables you to create more intuitive field names for use in the cash position process.
Position Source ID	Displays the data source of the node.
Position Source Set	Displays the criteria set to which the node belongs.
Process Frequency	Select *Always, Once,* or *Never.*
Weighting	Set the percentage that you apply to your Position Manager. For example, you use the weight of *1.1* to forecast a 10 percent increase or 110 percent of your current situation. Similarly, you use a weight of *.9* for a 10 percent decrease or 90 percent of your current situation.
	Click the Field Description button to enter a description for each row.

Setting Up Trees and Positions

To define tree and position information, use the following components:

• Define Time Span (POS_TIME_SPAN_PNL).

• Position Field Type (POS_FIELD_TYPE_PNL).

• Position Source Definition (POS_SOURCE_TBL).

• Create Position SQL (POS_CREATE_SQL).

• Manual Position Entry (POS_GENERIC_ENTRY).

Use the TR_POS_TIME_SPAN_GBL component interface to load data into the Time Span tables.

Use the TR_POS_CREATE_SQL_GBL component interface to load data into the Create Position SQL tables.

Use the POS_GENERIC_ENTRY_GBL component interface to load data into the Manual Position Entry tables.

Note. Additional integration-setup information is available for creating CPWs from data that are imported from JD Edwards General Accounting.

See *JD Edwards Application Integrations with PeopleSoft Applications, "Setting Up the Cash Position Worksheet Integration"*

Complete these steps to set up trees and positions:

1. Define position field types.

2. Define a position source.

3. Create a position tree.   57

4. Complete the position bin pages. (You should have four or five position bin pages, depending on the tree.)

    • Enter position-tree, source information.

    • Specify tree-wide options.

    • Define tree nodes.

    • Define node properties.

    • (Optional) Define node property SQL selection criteria.

    • Define position limits.

5. Create position SQL.

6. Schedule position tree SQL.

7. Define time buckets.

8. Schedule position time spans.

PeopleSoft Tree Definition

The position management tool enables you to calculate positions based on enterprise-wide data. This PeopleSoft application delivers sample position fields and sources in the sample database; however, we also provide pages that you can use to define the data that you want to track within the position analysis. Typically, you implement page-level security to limit access to these pages to the appropriate people within your organization. Two pages control the database fields that are available to position management: Position Field Types and Position Field Source.

Five pages are in the Position Bins component that is used to define a tree. The purpose of the tree is to determine which position bin pages you must complete. You do not necessarily need to complete every page in the component. One of these pages, Position Limits, applies only to Treasury Management position trees. If you are working with a cash position tree, this page does not appear.

You need to set up your position sources and alias names before creating a position tree. After you have created the tree, you generate the SQL and define time sets and cash position worksheets. This diagram illustrates the setup process:
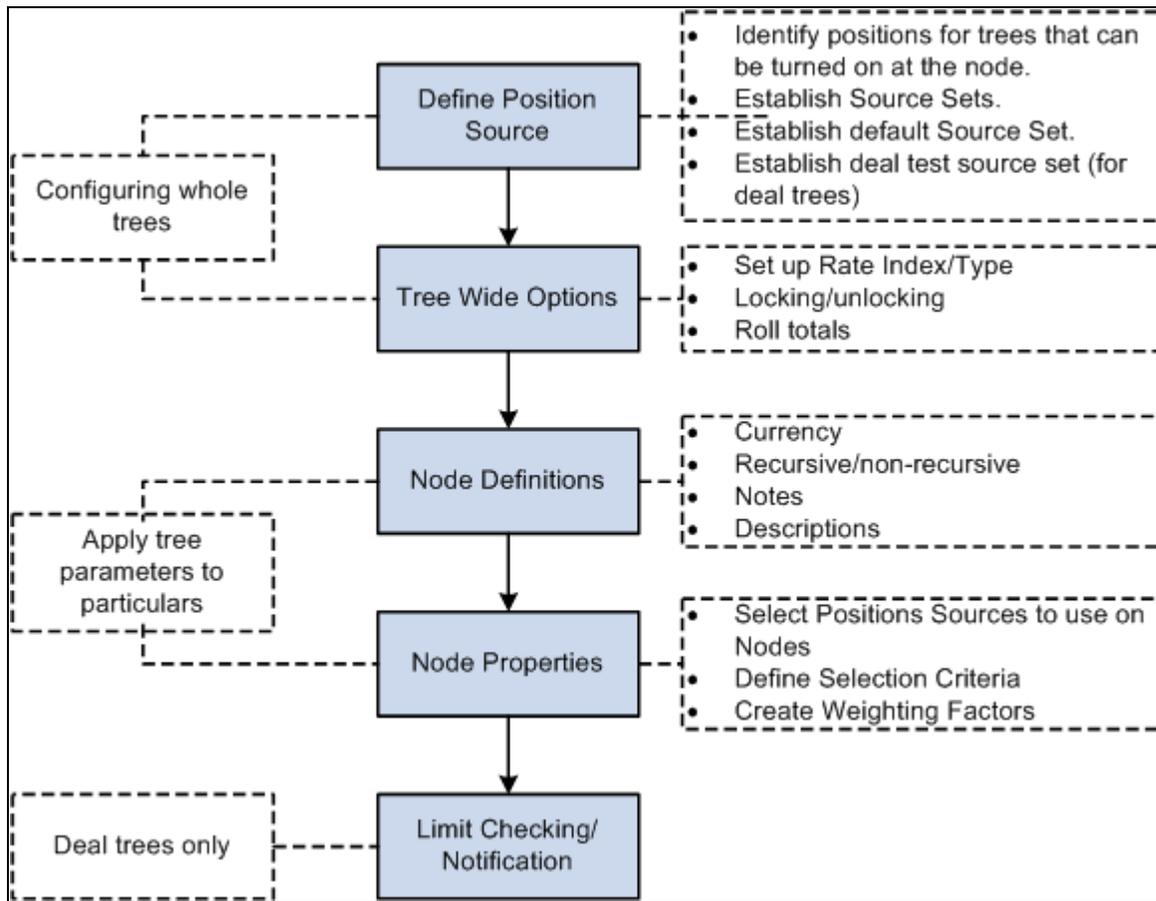
Setting up trees for Treasury Management

Each tree node corresponds to one or many position sources. Because you can define an unlimited number of position trees, you can analyze your data in as many ways as you think necessary. For Treasury Management position trees, you can also associate limits with a node.

When analyzing positions, use time spans to define the periods for which to view the data. Time spans add another dimension—time—to your positions. The system stores the position records, and you can use them for historical analysis and to forecast future positions.

Effective Dating of Treasury Trees

Cash Management Cash Position functionality *does not* support trees that are defined with multiple effective dates. In Cash Management, each tree can have only one effective date. To use the same tree with different (multiple) effective dates, you must copy the tree, save it with a unique name, and specify an effective date. For example, to define the TR_CASH_POSITION tree with three effective dates (January 1, 2000; January 1, 2001; and January 1, 2002), you need to create these three trees:

Tree Name	Effective Date
TR_CASH_POSITION_2000	01/01/2000

Tree Name	Effective Date
TR_CASH_POSITION_2001	01/01/2001
TR_CASH_POSITION_2002	01/01/2002

See Also

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Tree Manager

Common Elements Used in This Section

Node Definition	Define characteristics for a node, including data source, summarization rules, and revaluation currency.
Node Properties	Determine which subset of records to include in a tree node. SQL is required for nonrecursive nodes but is optional for recursive nodes.
Position Limits	Define internal and external limits for a tree, and notification rules when limits are breached. This limit applies only to trees that use the structure *TR_POSITION*.
Pos Tree Source (position tree source)	Define the source of data to include in a tree. This setting applies to the entire tree and is defined only once for each tree.
Tree-Wide Options	Set revaluation options, deal validation rules, and running total options for an entire tree.

Pages Used to Set Up Trees and Positions

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Position Field Types	POS_FIELD_TYPE_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Position Field Types	Define the sets of table fields that are available to the position management tool.
Position Source	POS_SOURCE_TBL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Position Source	Provide a more intuitive list of fields from which to select in the Position Manager. Use these alias names when entering selection criteria for position nodes

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Tree Manager	PSTREEMGR	Tree Manager, Tree Manager	Add a position tree and insert the tree nodes. See *PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Tree Manager.*
Position Tree Source	POS_TREE_SOURCE	Click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page. Select the Pos Tree Source (position tree source) tab.	Enter general information about the position source.
Tree Wide Options	POS_TREE_PNL	Click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page. Select the Tree Wide Options tab.	Specify the market rate index to use for currency revaluation and define whether a deal needs to meet the criteria for an end node on the tree during deal validation. You can also select an option to compute running totals during position analysis.
Node Definition	POS_DEF_OPER_PNL	Click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page. Select the Node Definition tab.	Specify the characteristics for each node of a tree.
Node Properties	POS_SOURCE_SET_PNL	Click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page. Select the Node Properties tab.	Define sources for the specified node.
Node Properties - All Selection Criteria	POS_ALL_CNDTN_SEC	Click View All Selection Criteria on the Node Properties page.	Create SQL statements of selection criteria for position source IDs.
Selection Criteria	POS_DEF_WHERE_SEC	Click Selection Criteria on the Node Properties page.	Enter selection criteria for a specific source ID.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Position Limits	POS_LIMITS	Click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page. Select the Position Limits tab.	Use this page *for treasury position trees only* to define your own internal treasury organization's limits, any external limits, and the limit currency to apply to the current tree node. You also indicate when limit checking should occur, who should be notified, and under what conditions. If you are using the Limit Checked workflow, you must establish position limits for the system to generate notifications.
Create Position SQL	POS_CREATE_SQL	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Create Position SQL	Translate conversational language into the language of database operations. You can roll up functions by extending SQL statements downward from the parent level. This page is automatically accessed if needed when you are running position trees in the Position Manager.
Schedule Position Tree SQL	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Schedule Position Tree SQL	Run the Schedule/Calculate Tree SQL process (TR_POS_CSQL) to set up the intervals in which your SQL is to run.
Define Time Buckets	POS_TIME_SPAN_PNL	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Time Bucket Definition	Categorize information from your treasury position or generated cash position. For example, you can define time spans with varying intervals, such as daily for a week, weekly for a quarter, and then quarterly for a year. The time spans that you define can overlap, run consecutively, or both.
Calculate Position Time Spans	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Calculate Position Time Spans	Run the Find Position Time Spans to Calculate process (TR_POSN_TSPAN) to set up the time spans for positions.

Defining Position Field Types

Access the Position Field Types page (Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Position Field Types).

Position Field Types page

Select a the Field Type in the system that you want this position field type Alias Name to represent.

Prompting Method

Select a Prompt option to indicate how to control prompting for values for the selected Field Type.

Record	Select to base the prompts on the actual database records. In theRecord Prompt field, enter the field on which prompting is based.
Translate	Select to base prompting on translate values rather than the records themselves, and select the field name to use for translation. This value applies only to field records that use translate values.

Define Meta Text

Meta Field	Select to incorporate a SQL statement with this alias. (Typically, you do not select this check box.)

In the Treasury Management sample database, %THIS DEAL is an example of a meta field. The following table lists the alias names that are delivered with the sample database:

Alias Name	Description
%THIS DEAL	This Deal
ACCOUNT	Account
ACCRUED INTEREST	Accrued Interest
ACQUISITION CODE	Acquisition Code
AMORTIZED DISCOUNT	Amortized Discount
AMOUNT	Amount
ASSET CATEGORY	Asset Category
ASSET CLASS	Asset Class
ASSET COST TYPE	Asset Cost Type
ASSET STATUS	Asset Status
BANK ACCOUNT CD	Bank Account Code
BANK ACCOUNT KEY	Bank Account Key
BANK BALANCE	Bank Balance
BANK COUNTERPARTY	Bank Counterparty
BANK ID NUMBER	Bank ID Number
BANK SET ID	SetID for Bank
BANK TYPE	Bank Type
BASE CURRENCY	Base Currency

Alias Name	Description
BOOK	Book
BOOK VALUE	Book Value
BROKER	Broker
BUDGET JOB CODE	Budget Job Code
BUDGET PROPOSAL ID	Budget Proposal ID
BUDGET SCENARIO	Scenario
BUSINESS UNIT	Business Unit
COUNTRY	Country
CPTY	Counterparty
CURRENCY	Currency
DEAL AMOUNT	Deal Amount
DEAL DATE	Deal Date
DEAL MATURITY DATE	Deal Maturity Date
DEAL SETTLEMENT DATE	Deal Settlement Date
DEAL STATUS	Deal Status
DEAL TERM	Deal Term
DEALER	Dealer
EXCLUDE FROM POSITION	Exclude From Position

Alias Name	*Description*
FACILITY ID	Facility ID
FACILITY REFERENCE	Facility
FINANCIAL ASSET	Financial Asset
GL ACCOUNT	GL Account
GL AFFILIATE	GL Affiliate
GL BUDGET LEDGER	Budget Ledger
GL DEPARTMENT ID	GL Department ID
GL PRODUCT	GL Product
GL PROJECT ID	GL Project ID
INSTRUMENT	Instrument
INSTRUMENT BASE TYPE	Instrument Base Type
INTEREST ACCRUED	Interest Accrued to Date
LIMIT RESERVED	Limit Reserved
ORIGINAL DEAL TERM	Original Deal Term
PARENT ID	Parent ID
PORTFOLIO	Portfolio
REFERENCE	Reference
SETTLEMENT DATE	Settlement Date

Alias Name	Description
TRANSACTION ISSUER	Issuer
TREASURY DEAL ID	Treasury Deal ID
TREASURY DEAL LEG	Treasury Deal Leg
TREASURY DEAL LINE	Treasury Deal Line
VALUE DATE	Value Date

Defining Position Sources

Access the Position Source page (Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Position Source).

Position Source

SetID:	SHARE	Source:	TREASURY_CASHFLOWS
Description:	Treasury Cashflows	Integration Map ID:	
*Record:	CASH_FLW_POS_VW		☐ Deal View

Position Source Mappings   Customize | Find | ⧉ | ⊞ | First ◀ 1-11 of 11 ▶ Last

*Field Name	*Alias Name	Position Field Types	Description	Long Description		
BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM	ACCOUNT	✎	Bank Account	🗒	➕	➖
AMOUNT	AMOUNT	✎	Amount	🗒	➕	➖
BANK_ACCT_KEY	BANK ACCOUNT KEY	✎	Bank Account Key	🗒	➕	➖
BANK_CD	BANK COUNTERPARTY	✎	Bank Code	🗒	➕	➖
BNK_ID_NBR	BANK ID NUMBER	✎	Other	🗒	➕	➖
BANK_SETID	BANK SET ID	✎	Bank SetID	🗒	➕	➖
SOURCE_BUS_UNIT	BUSINESS UNIT	✎	Business Unit	🗒	➕	➖
CURRENCY_CD	CURRENCY	✎	Currency Code	🗒	➕	➖
TR_SOURCE_ID	REFERENCE	✎	Reference ID	🗒	➕	➖
TR_SOURCE_CD	TR SOURCE	✎	Other	🗒	➕	➖
BUSINESS_DATE	VALUE DATE	✎	Business Date	🗒	➕	➖

Position Source page

This PeopleSoft application includes sample position sources in the sample database, including the ENTERPRISEONE -AP and ENTERPRISEONE -AR, which are used for integrating with the JD Edwards database.

Note. At the time of installation, you should evaluate the appropriateness of the delivered data to your business context and assess whether to create your own position sources. In many cases, you must create your own.

Integration Map ID	Select the appropriate preconfigured field mapping if you are importing source data from the JD Edwards database to generate the CPW.
	See *JD Edwards Application Integrations with PeopleSoft Applications, "Setting Up the PeopleSoft Treasury with JD Edwards General Accounting Integration," Setting Up Cash Position Worksheet Integration*
Record	Select the database from which the position source derives data.
Deal View	Select to permit remapping of amount fields for different instruments.

Position Source Mappings

Field Name	Displays available field names of the selected record.

🖊️   Click Position Field Types to define the sets of table fields that are
                                              available to the position management tool.

🖼️   Click Long Description to enter a comprehensive description for the field.

Note. To improve performance when calculating the CPW, you should reorganize high-volume transaction tables at the database level. For example, for the PS_ITEM table, modify the PS0ITEM index by adding the DUE_DT field to the end of the index with the dates arranged in ascending order.

Custom indexes can be added depending on the size of the table and the complexity of the data that are used in the trees.

Entering Position Tree Source Information

Access the Pos Tree Source page (click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page).

Pos Tree Source page

Position Source Set	Define the source for the tree (for example, CASH or DEAL). Select the check box to set this as the default source set. For a deal tree, you can specify this position source set as a deal test.
Position Source ID	The value that you select determines how the Amount Fields grid appears. Complete all of the fields.

Specifying Tree-Wide Options

Access the Tree Wide Options page (click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page and select the Tree Wide Options tab).

Tree Wide Options page

| **Market Rate Index** and **Rate Type** | When the currency of the amount that is used for determining a position is not the same currency that you define as the node currency, use these fields to revalue the amount. |

You must establish market rates for each currency pair that you revalue from the currency of the source position to the currency of the node position, or the system excludes the data. For example, suppose that you have various sources of data in which the currency is *USD, GBP, DEM,* and *JPY,* and the position currency for the node is set to *USD.* You define the following exchange rates:

From	*To*
USD	USD
GBP	USD
DEM	USD
JPY	USD

Note. When an exchange rate is entered from its own currency to its own currency, you must set the rate to *1*.

Tree Options

| **Allow Manual Updates** | Select to enable manual updates to the Lock/Unlock function on the CPW. |

Carry Total Forward   Select to compute running totals when the position is evaluated. The system adds ending balance amounts for one period to the beginning balance amounts for the next period. If you select this check box, also select the node, in the Add Total to Node field, to which you will carry the totals forward. Typically, you use this functionality for cash position trees, and the node that you select is the node that represents your beginning ledger balance.

Deal Must Exist as a Leaf   If you are working with a cash position tree, this option does not apply, and it will not appear on this page.

Select this option if you require that a deal match the criteria for an end node (leaf) of a tree to be valid. Deal validation testing occurs when you click the Deal Test button at deal entry. If this check box is not selected, then deals that do not specifically match the criteria for an end node, but that do meet the criteria for a level in the tree hierarchy, are considered valid.

Note. For deal validation using the Deal Test button, a tree *must* include *%THIS DEAL* in its root node selection criteria.

Defining Tree Nodes

Access the Node Definition page (click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page and select the Node Definition tab).

Node Definition page

Node Mode	Select a value based on the purpose of the node. For example, suppose that you are setting up a tree to track currency exposure. You may want to track exposure for only four or five main currencies. In that case, you would set the parent node to *Non-recursive* because you do not intend to include all possible foreign exchange (FX) deals in the child nodes and you want the parent node to provide total exposure for *all* currencies. On the other hand, if you want the parent node to provide total exposure for only the currencies that are selected in the child nodes, then you would set the parent node to *Recursive.* During position analysis, if your tree hierarchy contains parent nodes that are nonrecursive and the children beneath that node do not specifically select all the data, then the remaining amounts will be incorporated into an *other* node so that the sum total of the child nodes equals that of the parent. Values are:
	Recursive: If a node is recursive, its total is determined by summing the totals of all the child nodes beneath it.
	Non-recursive: If a node is nonrecursive, its total is determined by summing the amounts for those transactions that meet the selection criteria for that node, independent of any child nodes that may exist beneath it.
Position Currency	Each node can report amounts in a different currency. Select the currency on which to base this node's amounts. Any amounts that are not in this currency will be revalued to this currency, using the market rate settings that you made on the Tree Wide Options page.

Note. End nodes, or leaves, of a tree must always be set to *Non-recursive,* and nonrecursive nodes *must* have selection criteria defined for each position source they use.

Defining Node Properties

Access the Node Properties page (click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page and select the Node Properties tab).

Node Properties page

Use This Source	Deselect this check box to prevent use of a position source ID.
Selection Criteria	Click to view the Selection Criteria page for the selected position source ID, or click the View All Selection Criteria button to view all selection criteria information.

Defining Node Properties SQL Selection Criteria for Position Source Sets

Access the Node Properties - All Selection Criteria page (click View All Selection Criteria on the Node Properties page).

Node Properties - All Selection Criteria page

After you create SQL statements with selection criteria for position source IDs, use the Create Position SQL page to process the SQL statements for the tree.

Open and **Close**	Select a character to open or close the statement.
Operator	Select a mathematical operator, and specify the value for the alias name.
Oper (operand)	Select a value when concatenating multiple SQL statements.

See Also

Chapter 6, "Defining Cash Positions," Creating Position SQL, page 75

Defining Position Limits

Access the Position Limits page (click Edit Data on the Tree Manager page and select the Position Limits tab).

Position Limits page

Position Type	Select from the following options:
	Long Limit Only: Select this option if you want notification in conditions in which you have a long position. Specify values in the Min (minimum), Max (maximum), and Long fields.
	Short and Long Limit: Select this option if you want notification in conditions in which you have either a short or a long position. Specify values in the Max Short and Max Long fields.
	Short Limit Only: Select this option if you want notification in conditions in which you have a short position. Specify values in the Min Short and Max Short fields.
Internal/External Limits	Indicate whether the limit is determined by an *Internal* source or is imposed from an *External* source, such as a counterparty.
Currency	Enter the long and short limit amounts for the defined currency.

Limit Check

Use the Limit Check grid to indicate when these position limits are checked. You can select both the Pre-Defined and Deal Entry check boxes.

Pre-Defined	Select for position limits to be automatically checked, and define a value in the Recurrence field to check position limits at regular intervals.
Deal Entry	Select to ensure that these position limits can be checked at deal entry (by clicking the Test Limits button on the Deal Detail page).

Limit Warning Notification

Role Name	Select a role name to receive warning notification. Specify either a limit value or select the Percentage check box, and enter a limit percent that activates the warning notification.

See Also

PeopleSoft Deal Management 9.1 PeopleBook, "Defining Instrument Types and Instrument Templates"

PeopleSoft Risk Management 9.1 PeopleBook, "Managing Position Limits"

Creating Position SQL

Access the Create Position SQL page (Cash Management, Administer Cash, Create Position SQL).

Create SQL	Click to generate the SQL for the tree. When the process finishes, a dialog box appears with this message: Completed creating SQL.
SQL Statement	Displays the SQL statement that the system generates for the node.

Scheduling Position Tree SQL

Access the Schedule Position Tree SQL page (Cash Management, Administer Cash, Schedule Position Tree SQL).

Schedule Position Tree SQL page

Bind Variable Name	In the Parameters grid is an Application Engine run control function that enables you to specify the variable for which you are setting the value. Select the bind variable name of *TREE_NAME,* and enter the specific tree name to be calculated in the Value field. You can add records and specify as many bind variable names as are pertinent to the job.

Defining Time Buckets

Access the Define Time Buckets page (Cash Management, Administer Cash, Time Bucket Definition, Define Time Buckets).

Define Time Buckets page

Number	Indicates the sequential time segment that you are modifying.

Start	Select a start type to indicate how the system determines when a time segment starts. Values are:
	Defined by Period above: Starts the current time segment when the prior time segment ends. You cannot select this option for the first segment.
	Specific Date: Starts the current time segment on a specific date. When you select this option, enter the date in the Start Date field.
	Specific Period: Starts the current time segment on the first day of a specified period. When you select this option, select the calendar on which to base the period start.
	Today: Starts the current time segment today. Select this value when you want the time span to be based on a current date. Every time the system calculates the time span, this field is updated with the current date.
Cycle	Select a cycle type to indicate the repetition frequency of a time segment. Values are:
	Relative: Cycles the time segment a relative number of times. When you select this value, enter the number of times it repeats, and then enter the frequency of repetition in the Relative field. You can repeat this a number of days, months, or years. For example, to have this time segment repeat daily for five days, you would enter *5* in the Number field, and select *Days* in the Relative field.
	Use Period Definitions: Cycles the time segment based on the period definitions from a business calendar. When you select this value, select the calendar on which to base this frequency. For example, suppose that you want this time segment to cycle by quarters. Select a defined quarterly calendar in frequency.
End	Use to control when a time segment ends. After completing the appropriate number of cycles, the following values are available to control the end of the segment:
	End of Next Cycle: Completes the time segment at the end of the next cycle. Select the calendar to use to determine the ending.
	End of Period: Completes the time segment when the period that is defined by the selected calendar ends. Select the calendar to use to determine the ending period.
	End of Previous Cycle: Completes the time segment when the previous cycle ends. Select the calendar to use to determine the ending period.
	Number of Periods: Completes the time segment after repeating the cycle a given number of periods. Enter the number of times the period should cycle.
Calculate	Click to generate the time span intervals. Your results appear in the Resulting Time Periods group box.

Calculate Position Time Spans

Access the Calculate Position Time Spans page (Cash Management, Administer Cash, Calculate Position Time Spans).

Calculate Position Time Spans page

Bind Variable Name	The Parameters grid contains an application-engine, run-control function that enables you to specify the variable for which you are setting the value. Select the bind variable name of *TIME_SET,* and enter the specific time span to be calculated in the Value field. You can add records and specify as many bind variable names as are pertinent to the job.

Managing Position Worksheets

To define position forecasting rules, use the Position Forecasting Rules component (POS_FORECAST_RULES).

After you have created your position trees, use the Position Manager to generate the worksheet and manipulate the cash position data.

The Position Manager is based on trees that use the TR_CASH_POSITIONS structure. Trees provide a hierarchical structure and enable you to generate numbers that are not automatically captured. Many options are available for generating your worksheet. For example, you can:

• Forecast your position over a period of time or evaluate it for just one day.

• Base your position on a previous worksheet, adjusting the amounts by a specified factor to estimate future cash positions.

• Calculate the position for an entire tree or for a particular node of a tree.

• Step through the tree nodes that compose the worksheet, zooming into the detail transactions.

You can copy worksheets to compare actual totals to projected amounts using the copy and forecasting functionality. Actual cash position data that are calculated for a tree, can be copied forward and used for forecasting future cash positions using the parameters that are defined on the Position Forecasting Rules page.

Note. For each tree, only one worksheet can be stored for each calculation date. If you recalculate (using the same calculation date) a worksheet that was previously stored, the new worksheet overwrites the values of the first worksheet. The calculation date is set by the system when the worksheet is generated. You should print files for later comparison. You can generate an online, cash position report using BI Publisher functionality.

This section provides an overview of methods for viewing cash position worksheets, lists common elements, and discusses how to:

- Generate position worksheets.

- Define Position Manager options.

- Create an ad hoc position worksheet.

- View Position Manager results.

- View transaction details by source.

- Create forecasting rules.

- Copy worksheets.

- Schedule Position Manager.

- Export worksheets with PS/nVision.

    Note. The method for exporting worksheets using PS/nVision is deprecated functionality in PeopleSoft 9 Treasury. A more robust method using BI Publisher is available from the Position Manager Options page.

- Load CPW data from an JD Edwards database

Methods for Viewing Cash Position Worksheets

After a CPW is generated, you can view it in several ways:

- Online using the Position Manager Results page.

- Using PS/nVision to export the CPW to a Microsoft Excel® spreadsheet.

- Using BI Publisher to generate CPW reports in PDF, HTML, RTF, and XLS file formats.

    Use the RTF template to generate the CPW using BI Publisher.

See *PeopleTools PeopleBook: BI Publisher for PeopleSoft* .

Common Elements Used in This Section

Calculation Preferences	Specify a predefined, calculation-preferences sheet (Position Manager Options) to calculate your cash position.
Other	The Other node is created during CPW generation to balance node amount discrepancies resulting from such things as foreign exchange rates, nonrecursive node modes, and so forth. When viewing CPWs using BI Publisher, only one, general **Other** node is created that displays the total sum of all Other nodes, regardless of their position in the tree hierarchy.
Position	Controls which portion of the tree the system uses when calculating the worksheet. Typically, you generate the worksheet from the root node, therefore, the system automatically uses the top level or root node of the tree. If you want to calculate a worksheet for a particular node, however, enter that node here.
Worksheet	Select the tree to use as the basis of your worksheet.

Pages Used to Manage Position Worksheets

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Navigation*	*Usage*
Position Manager	POS_IMPCT_MGR	Cash Management, Cash Position, Position Manager	Administer your worksheets from a central location.
Position Manager Options	POS_IMPCT_OPT_PNL	Click the Edit icon on the Position Manager page.	Define the options for the Position Manager.
Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet	POS_IMPCT_OPT_PNL	Click the Create an Ad-Hoc Worksheet link on the Position Manager page.	Set up ad hoc positions to generate a current, one-time cash position worksheet. Unlike cash position worksheets that are generated using options that are defined on the Position Manager Options page, the calculation preferences and results of the ad hoc worksheet are not saved.
Position Manager Results	POS_IMPCT_RSLT_PNL	Click the Calculate button on the Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet page.	Display the results of the calculation on the Position Manager page. This page appears automatically when you calculate your cash position from the Position Manager page.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Position by Source	POS_IMPCT_RSLT_DT1	Click Drill to Detail on the Position Manager Results page.	View the source transactions for the node.
Position Forecasting Rules	POS_FORECAST_RULES	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Position Forecasting Rules	Set up rules for forecasting.
Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules	POS_HIST_FORECAST	Click Copy on the Position Manager Results page.	Generate a copy of a worksheet. To create projected forecasts or modify cash flow amounts, you must create a worksheet copy.
Schedule Position Manager	TR_POS_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, Cash Position, Schedule Position Manager	Run the Cash Position/Position Monitor Application Engine process (TR_POS_TOTAL) to schedule the Position Manager to run at specified times.
Position Report Periods	POS_REPORT_PNL	Cash Management, Cash Position, Position Report Periods	Use PS/nVision to generate a Microsoft Excel file of Position Manager. See *PeopleTools PeopleBook: PS/nVision*
Position Manager Data Load	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, Cash Position, Position Manager Data Load	Run the Application Engine to load the external data from the JD Edwards database using the JDBJ API. Run this process only if your system is set up to generate a CPW from data that are imported from a JD Edwards database. See *JD Edwards Application Integrations with PeopleSoft Applications, "Using the PeopleSoft Treasury with JD Edwards General Accounting Integration"*

Generating Position Worksheets

Access the Position Manager page (Cash Management, Cash Position, Position Manager, Position Manager).
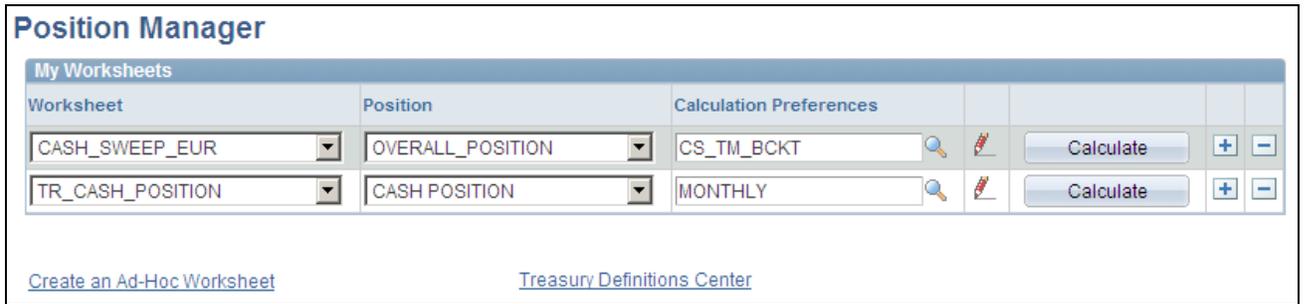
Position Manager page

	Click the Edit icon to access the Position Manager Options page and define options and limitations for working with your positions.
Calculate	Click to generate position results for the specified worksheet, position, and calculation preferences.

Note. Poor performance while you are generating the CPW might be rectified through modifications that affect how the position sources data are accessed.

See Also

Defining Position Manager Options

Access the Position Manager Options page (click the Edit icon on the Position Manager page).

Position Manager Options page

Load External Data	Select to generate the CPW from data that are imported from the JD Edwards General Accounting tables.
	See *JD Edwards Application Integrations with PeopleSoft Applications, "Using the PeopleSoft Treasury with JD Edwards General Accounting Integration," Retrieving Data from JD Edwards for the PeopleSoft Cash Position Worksheet*

Time Horizon Options

Indicate how to group the position totals over time. The time spans must be calculated before you generate the worksheet.

Value Date	To generate a worksheet with totals for a single day, select and enter the date.

Source Set	Similar to a value date, but you can compare two similar tree structures. Source sets enable you to combine multiple tree structures into a single tree, for example, where actual versus projected positions have slightly different selection criteria.
Time Set	To create the position totals over a period of time, select the particular time set from the list of values. This option enables you to generate totals that range over a period of time that is segmented, for example, by the cycles that are defined in your business calendars, such as daily for a month, quarterly for six months, and then yearly for two years.
▤	Click to access and edit the Position Time Spans page to define time spans.

Recalculation Options

Recalculation Option	Select from the following options to indicate how to calculate the worksheet:

- *Recalculate Current Position:* Generates totals for the node selected in position and any child nodes beneath it.

- *Recalculate Entire Worksheet:* Generates totals for the complete tree, regardless of the node selected in position.

- *Use Data Calculated On:* Displays totals that were generated on an earlier date. If you select this value, enter the date in the adjacent field to load an existing worksheet. For example, you can use this option to load a previous worksheet, using it as the basis for a future forecast.

- *View Copied Data:* Enables you to view copied worksheets.

Position Impact Functions

Select any combination of the following options:

Use Source Weighting	Select to use weighting values that you set on the Position Forecasting Rules page or the Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules page.
Include Copied Data	Select to include data from the most recent Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules page.
Show Non Business Day Columns	Select to view data columns for regular nonbusiness days (for example, Saturday and Sunday) and holidays.
Use Lock Reminder	Select this check box if you are doing intraday reporting and cash position analysis (or intraday cash position analysis). If this check box is selected, the system prompts you with a reminder message on the Position Manager page when you click the Return to Position Manager link.

Transfer Options

Select a transfer option and specify a corresponding template to use on the Funds Transfer page, which is accessible from the Position Results page.

Revalue Positions

Revalue Currency	Select a currency, other than the system currency, in which to calculate the worksheet.
Revalue Date Type	Select one of the following values:
	Use Current Date: The system uses the current system date to calculate the worksheet.
	Use Calculation Date: The system uses the as of date that is specified by the *Use Data Calculated On* value to calculate the worksheet.

Additional Criteria

For additional flexibility, you can specify criteria that further limits the amounts that are included in the Position Manager, either a particular currency or bank information.

Note. To view a worksheet that was calculated with additional criteria, you must specify the same criteria when you select the *Use Data Calculated On* value to display the worksheet.

BI Publisher Report Options

Generate Position Report	Select to automatically generate a cash position report using BI Publisher each time the cash position is calculated.
Output Format Type	Select a format for viewing and printing the cash position report. Options are:

- *HTML:* Report can be viewed in a web browser.

- *PDF:* Report will appear online when you use the Adobe Reader®. This method is recommended for viewing the cash position report online.

- *RTF:* Report can be viewed in Microsoft® Word.

- *XLS:* Report can be viewed in Microsoft Excel®.

Note. You must select an output format type even if the Generate Position Report check box is not selected. This selection enables you to generate a report manually, at your discretion, from the Position Manager Results page.

See Also

PeopleTools PeopleBook: BI Publisher for PeopleSoft

Creating an Ad Hoc Position Worksheet

Access the Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet page (click Create an Ad Hoc Worksheet on the Position Manager page).

Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet page

The Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet page contains functionality that is similar to that of the Position Manager Options page, with the addition of theWorksheet andPosition fields and the Calculate button.

See Also

Chapter 6, "Defining Cash Positions," Defining Position Manager Options, page 82

Viewing Position Manager Results

Access the Position Manager Results page (click the Calculate button on the Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet page).

Position Manager Results page

You run the cash position calculation from the Position Manager page. When the calculation of the worksheet is complete, the results appear automatically.

Note. The amounts that appear are in the base currency that was specified for the source tree, unless another currency was selected in the Revalue Currency field on the Position Manager Options page. In such cases, the amounts will appear in the currency selected there and revalued based on the defined exchange rate. All entries must be of a currency for which an exchange rate is established; otherwise, they will not be included in the generation of the CPW. Exchange rates are set on the Market Rates page.

When you manually enter new amounts on this page, the system assumes that the values entered are in the base currency of the tree, not in the revalued currency. Manually entering new amounts in the revalued currency and clicking Refresh Totals will generate unexpected, and possibly erroneous, new totals.

See Chapter 2, "Defining Cash Management Processing Options," Defining Market Rates, page 16.

Position	Indicates the node that you are viewing.
Refresh Totals	Click to recalculate column totals.
Calculate	Recalculates the cash position based on your defined calculation options. If you edit a node amount but do not save and lock the edited field, then clicking Calculate returns the worksheet to its original state.
Step Back	You can drill down into node detail and then return to overall node data.
Copy	Click to access the Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules page to use a forecasting function.

The remainder of the page displays the worksheet, with the amounts broken down by the periods of the time set. Each period is listed, along with its start and end date.

	If the row is a detail node, that is, if it has no subordinate (child) nodes, click the Drill to Detail button to view the source transactions for the node.
	Click the Transfer button to access the Funds Transfer page.
	Click the Lock button to lock the value, which you would enter on an ad hoc basis. To see your new, updated totals, save the worksheet and click the Calculate button to refresh the data. To enable locking, open the tree in Tree Manager and select the Allow Manual Updates check box. If a node is locked, the value does not change if the tree is recalculated. It stays as it is until it is unlocked.
	Click the Unlock button to unlock the value and edit the cell. The next time that you recalculate the worksheet, the system enters this number from system data.
Scroll Left and **Scroll Right**	Click to navigate the time periods of the worksheet.
Enter Manual Position	Click to apply tree functionality to ad hoc data.
View Position Report	Click to generate a cash position report using BI Publisher.

Navigating Tree Nodes

Each row of the worksheet represents a child node of the position that is listed.

- If a row contains additional nodes beneath it, you can navigate down the tree to those child nodes by clicking the Next Step button. The Position field is updated to indicate the current node.

- To navigate back up to the previous level, click the Step Back button.

The worksheet displays only the nodes at the next immediate level below the position node. As shown in the following diagram, when the position node is *CASH POSITION,* you see only the nodes at the next immediate level; you see the four children of that node. To see the worksheet that is composed of the rows AR RECPTS, LOCKBOX RCPTS, AP DISBURSMTS, and CONTR DISB, change the position node to *OPER. REC./DISBURSE.*
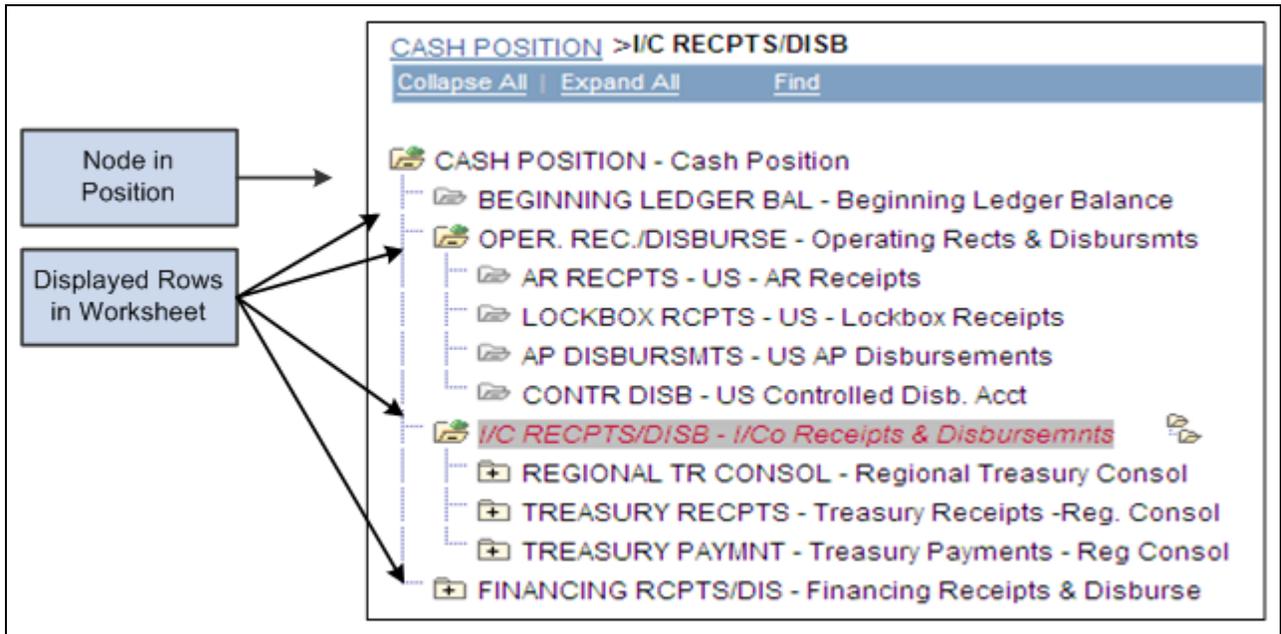
Viewing children of a position node

See Also

Viewing Transaction Details by Source

Access the Position by Source page (click Drill to Detail on the Position Manager Results page).

Position Source ID	Enter search parameters to view position source transactions for a specified period. Select a position source ID and period, and then click the Search button.

Creating Forecasting Rules

Access the Position Forecasting Rules page (Cash Management, Administer Cash, Position Forecasting Rules).

You can create forecasting rules that apply to three variables: business day convention, increasing/decreasing by a factor, or shifting days. A forecasting rule would apply at the tree level. In addition, you can refine these variables at the node or source level.

Copying Worksheets

Access the Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules page (click Copy on the Position Manager Results page).

Worksheet Offset

Specify the search parameters to return data for the Worksheet Data region.

Business Day Convention	Select the convention that applies to your scenario, and then enter the number of years, months, and days that you want to extend your worksheet. These numbers can be positive or negative, generating future or historical worksheets.
Apply Worksheet Offset	Click to populate fields in the Worksheet Data region automatically with parameters that are specified in the Worksheet Offset group box.
Clear	Click to clear your applied worksheet offsets and repopulate the Worksheet Data region with the original information.
OK	Click to save your worksheet changes and return to the Position Manager Results page.
	This button is unavailable until you enter worksheet offset information and click the Apply Worksheet Offset button.

Note. The system retains only one historic worksheet per calculated date.

Scheduling Position Manager

Access the Schedule Position Manager page (Cash Management, Cash Position, Schedule Position Manager).

Schedule Position Manager

Run Control ID: CPOS_SCHED   Report Manager   Process Monitor   [Run]

Parameters   Find | View All First ◄ 1 of 1 ► Last

*SetID: SHARE 🔍   *Tree Name: _____ 🔍

*Tree Node: _____ 🔍 *Effective Date: 01/01/1900 📅

*Start Date: _____ 📅   *End Date: _____ 📅

☐ Generate Position Report

Additional Criteria

Currency: ___ 🔍   Bank Business Unit: ____ 🔍   Bank SetID: ____ 🔍

Bank Code: ____ 🔍   Bank Account: ____ 🔍

Calculation Options

*Time Horizon: Time Set ▾   Time Set: _____

Revalue Currency: ___   *Revalue Date Type: Use Current Date ▾

☐ Use Source Weighting   ☐ Include Copied Data   ☑ Show Non Business Day Columns

XML Publisher Report Options

*Output Format Type: PDF ▾

Schedule Position Manager page

Refer to the documentation of the Position Manager Options page for the descriptions of fields on this page.

See Chapter 6, "Defining Cash Positions," Defining Position Manager Options, page 82.

Generate Position Report	Select to generate a cash position report using BI Publisher.

BI Publisher Report Options

Output Format Type	Select a format for viewing and printing the cash position report. Options are:

- *HTML:* The report can be viewed in a web browser.

- *PDF:* The report will appear online using the Adobe Reader®. This method is recommended for viewing the cash position report online.

- *RTF:* The report can be viewed in Microsoft® Word.

- *XLS:* The report can be viewed in Microsoft Excel®.

See Also

PeopleTools PeopleBook: BI Publisher for PeopleSoft   93

Exporting the Worksheet with PS/nVision

Access the Position Report Periods page (Cash Management, Cash Position, Position Report Periods).

Position Report Periods page

This PeopleSoft application provides a PS/nVision layout with which you can generate a Microsoft Excel™ file for your Position Manager. The layout uses the TR_CASH_POSITION tree to create the file. The PS/nVision layout must be configured to create a spreadsheet that is based on a different tree.

Time Set	Select the length of time for each period. The field options are created on the Define Time Buckets page. The delivered options are:

- *Daily*

- *Monthly*

- *Rolling*

- *Rolling-1*

- *Rolling-2*

See Chapter 6, "Defining Cash Positions," Defining Time Buckets, page 76.

Process	Before you use PS/nVision, you must create the time periods for the report. Click to generate the report periods that are used by PS/nVision. The system updates the page and displays the periods.

See *PeopleTools PeopleBook: PS/nVision*

Loading CPW Data from a JD Edwards Database

Access the Position Manager Data Load page (Cash Management, Cash Position, Position Manager Data Load).

Position Manager Data Load page

Run the Position Manager Data Load Application Engine process (TR_POS_WKSLD), which loads the CPW data tables with data from the JD Edwards database that is specified on the Installation Options - Treasury page. The Application Engine requires passing the name of the integration map ID to use for importing the data. The map ID is set using the Bind Variable Name field. This process allows for importing the data before generating the worksheet. An option is available to reimport the data just before the worksheet is generated.

Bind Variable Name	Select the bind variable that identifies the integration map ID that is used to determine which data to retrieve. INTEGRATION_MAP_ID is delivered as the default setting.
Value	Enter the value of the bind variable for the particular run of the process that you define on the Position Manager Field Map page. The E1_AR_MAP and the E1_AR_MAP integration maps are delivered preconfigured for the CPW integration process.
	See *JD Edwards Application Integrations with PeopleSoft Applications,* "Setting Up the Treasury Integration in the PeopleSoft Database," Setting Up the Cash Position Worksheet Integration

See Also

Creating Intraday Bank Reporting Worksheets

This section provides an overview of intraday bank reporting and cash positions, lists prerequisites, and discusses how to calculate intraday cash position reporting worksheets.

Understanding Intraday Bank Reporting and Cash Positions

Intraday reporting and cash position functionality that are included with Cash Management enable you to monitor your organization's cash position several times in a day. You can establish three cash positions (10 a.m., 2 p.m., and 4 p.m.). You then monitor each position's progress during the day by importing updated same bank statement information, making changes, and locking down your cash positions as required.

To help you with intraday bank reporting and cash positions, we have added a tree (INTRADAY_CASH_POS) to the Tree Manager sample data, a worksheet (INTRADAY_CASH_POS), and two node (INTRADAY_INFLOWS and INTRADAY_OUTFLOWS) to the Position Manager page.

The INTRADAY_CASH_POS tree includes the following five nodes:

• Bank Balance.

• Intraday Outflows.

• Intraday Inflows.

• Treasury Cash flows.

• Target Balance.

The INTRADAY_CASH_POS worksheet corresponds to the INTRADAY_CASH_POS tree and is preconfigured with three source sets for 10 a.m., 2 p.m., and 4 p.m. The INTRADAY_INFLOWS and INTRADAY_OUTFLOWS positions are associated with their corresponding tree node. When you select one of these positions to calculate the worksheet, the system derives information from the sources that are specified for that node. You can then track the intraday activity through the position worksheet calculations.

During the course of a day, you use the Load Electronic Statements feature to load the same-day bank statement table with updated information. Using the worksheet's lock feature, you can store any position with its existing current information. When the worksheet is recalculated, existing data in any open unlocked position is overwritten with the updated bank information. For example, you can load the updated bank statement information and lock the positions in this manner:

• Perform the initial daily load of the bank statement table at 10 a.m., and lock the 10 a.m. position.

• Reload the bank statement table at 2 p.m. (the system recalculates the 2 p.m. and 4 p.m. positions), and lock the 2 p.m. position.

• Perform the final load of the bank statement table at 4 p.m. (the system recalculates the 4 p.m. position), and lock the 4 p.m. position.

You can lock any one position and have the other positions appear as unlocked. You can also use one position as the final position for the day, either the current locked position or the last position for the day (the 4 p.m. position).

Prerequisites

Before creating position worksheets, you should reconcile bank transactions and review same-day bank balance information to identify your true cash flow.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Reconciling Statements"

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Receiving and Updating Bank Statements," Updating Current Day Bank Statements

Pages Used to Create Intraday Bank Reporting Worksheets

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Current Day Balances	BANK_SDBAL_ENTRY	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Current Day Statements	Review the same-day bank balance information that is automatically imported into the system before using it in the intraday cash position worksheet.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Enter Current Day Transactions	BANK_SDSTMT_ENTRY	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Current Day Statements Select the Current Day Transactions tab.	Review the same-day bank transaction information that is automatically imported into the system before using it in the intraday cash position worksheet.
Position Manager	POS_IMPCT_MGR	Cash Management, Cash Position, Position Manager	Administer your worksheets from a central location.
Position Manager Options	POS_IMPCT_OPT_PNL	Click Edit on the Position Manager page.	Set up the options for the Position Manager.
Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet	POS_IMPCT_OPT_PNL	Click Create an Ad Hoc Worksheet on the Position Manager page.	Set up ad hoc positions.
Position Manager Results	POS_IMPCT_RSLT_PNL	Click Calculate on the Ad-Hoc Position Worksheet page.	Display the results of the calculation on the Position Manager page. This page appears automatically after the calculation is complete.
Position by Source	POS_IMPCT_RSLT_DT1	Click Drill to Detail on the Position Manager Results page.	View the source transactions for the node.
Position Forecasting Rules	POS_FORECAST_RULES	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Position Forecasting Rules	Set up rules for forecasting.
Copy/Apply Forecasting Rules	POS_HIST_FORECAST	Click Copy on the Position Manager Results page.	Generate a copy of a worksheet. To create projected forecasts or modify cash flow amounts, you must create a worksheet copy.
Schedule Position Manager	TR_POS_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, Cash Position, Schedule Position Manager	Run the Cash Position/Position Monitor Application Engine process (TR_POS_TOTAL) to schedule the Position Manager to run at specified times.
Position Report Periods	POS_REPORT_PNL	Cash Management, Cash Position, Position Report Periods	Use PS/nVision to generate a Microsoft Excel file of Position Manager.

Calculating Intraday Cash Position Reporting Worksheets

Before calculating an intraday cash position, determine whether you need to load information into the bank statement table.

See

The following example assumes that you are working with the 10 a.m. position.

To calculate an intraday, cash position reporting worksheet:

1. Select *INTRADAY_CASH_POS* in the Worksheet field on the Position Manager page.

2. Select a tree node value for the position:

    •   *INTRADAY INFLOWS*

    •   *INTRADAY OUTFLOWS*

    •   *OPENING AVAILABLE*

    •   *TARGET BALANCE*

    •   *TOTAL*

    •   *TREASURY CASH FLOWS*

3. Specify *TODAY* for the worksheet calculation preferences.

4. Click the Edit button to access the Position Manager Options page.

5. In the Time Horizon Option region, specify a time horizon of *Source Set* and a source set of the current (system) date.

6. For the Recalculation Options field, select the *Recalculate Entire Worksheet* value.

7. Select the Use Lock Reminder check box, save the page, and then click the Return to Position Manager link.

8. Click Calculate on the Position Manager page.

9. On the Position Manager Results page, the bottom row of lock buttons are the Lock All Nodes buttons. Each lock button is associated with a particular time: 10:00 a.m., 2:00 p.m., and 4:00 p.m. (Move your cursor over the button to view the hover text.)

    Edit the particular node, and click the associated Lock All Nodes button (in this example, the 10 a.m. node). Save the page.

10. Click the Return to Position Manager link. The system displays the reminder message. Check your locked positions, and click the Return to Position Manager link.

11. Click Calculate on the Position Manager page.

12. Review the calculation results on the Position Manager Results page.

You need to repeat this process to recalculate the worksheet for the next intraday position. To do this, reload the same day bank statements and repeat steps 1–12 for the 2 p.m. or 4 p.m. position. This action causes the system to refresh the worksheet calculations with the updated same-day bank information.

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Receiving and Updating Bank Statements," Updating Current Day Bank Statements.

Creating CPW Data Manually

With Manual Position Entry, you enter data manually, create a source over it, and then place the source on a particular tree node. This diagram shows an overview of the Manual Position Entry process:
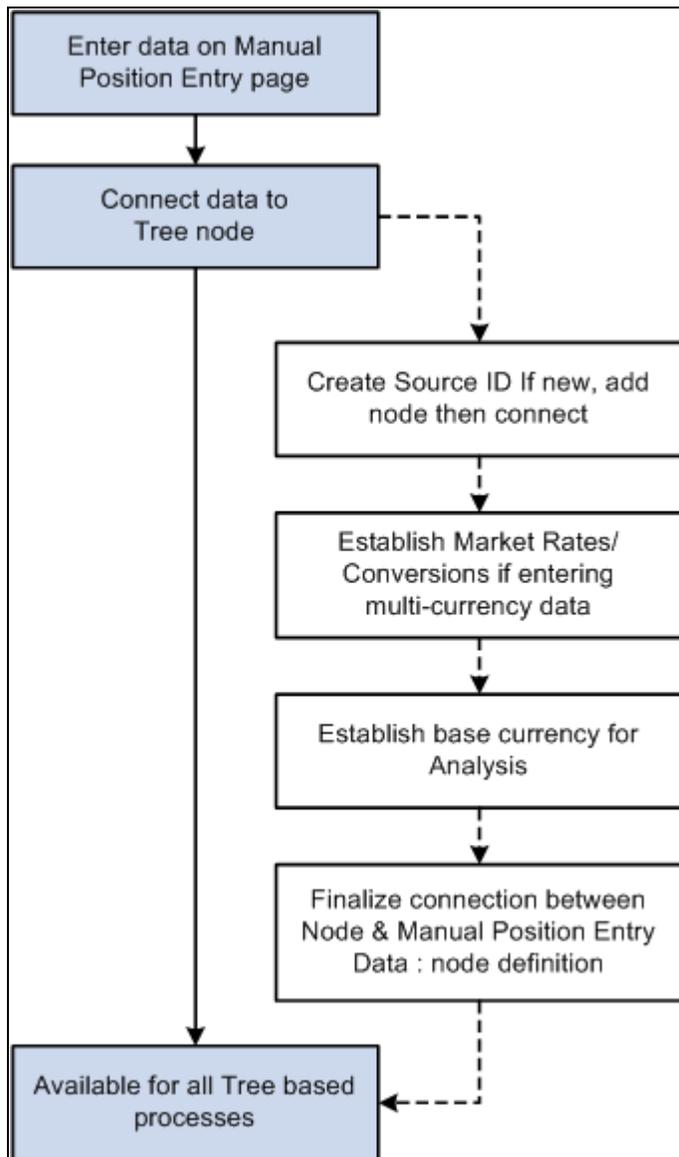
Manual Position Entry process

This section discusses how to:

- Enter manual position information.

- Define additional search criteria.

- Copy data forward.

Pages Used to Create Position Worksheet Data Manually

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Enter Manual Position	POS_GENERIC_ENTRY	Cash Management, Cash Position, Enter Manual Position	Search existing Position Manager data, and apply tree functionality to ad hoc data. This page is used to capture the data and begin structuring it so that you can connect it to an existing tree.
Additional Search Criteria	POS_GEN_ENT_SRCH	Click Additional Search Criteria on the Manual Position Entry page.	Increase the granularity of your search options.
Copy Data Forward	POS_GEN_ENT_COPY	Click Copy on the Manual Position Entry page.	Specify date and repeat parameters for copying forward rows of position entry information.
Additional Information	POS_GENERIC_ENTRY	Select the Additional Information tab on the Enter Manual Position page.	Add supplementary information to the manual position entry.

Entering Manual Position Information

Access the Enter Manual Position page (Cash Management, Cash Position, Enter Manual Position).

Enter Manual Position

*SetID	*Unit	*Category	*Value Date	*Reference	*Amount	*Currency		
SHARE	CAN01	CAN MFG	07/31/2000	CAN MFG RESULTS	1652985.00	CAD	+	−
SHARE	FRA01	FRA MFG	07/31/2000	FRA MFG RESULTS	156853.00	FRF	+	−
SHARE	GBR01	GBR MFG	07/31/2000	GBR MFG RESULTS	65982.00	GBP	+	−
SHARE	DEU01	DEU MFG	07/31/2000	DEU MFG RESULTS	1562985.00	DEM	+	−
SHARE	AUS01	AUS MFG	07/31/2000	AUS MFG RESULTS	1526589.00	AUD	+	−
SHARE	US001	TARGET BALANCE	10/24/2000	TARGET BALANCE	-25000.00	USD	+	−
SHARE	US001	AR	10/24/2000	AR WEST REGION	3150000.00	USD	+	−
SHARE	US001	AP	10/24/2000	AP WEST REGION	-2550000.00	USD	+	−
SHARE	US001	AR	10/24/2000	AR EAST REGION	3250000.00	USD	+	−
SHARE	US001	OTHER	10/24/2000	MISC PROJECTED	-50000.00	USD	+	−

Enter Manual Position page - Entry Details tab

Additional Search Criteria	Click this link to narrow your search by selecting supplementary search categories.
Category	Displays another name for the target tree node.
Copy	Click to specify parameters for copying forward rows of position entry information.

Note. All lines that are added to the Manual Position Entry grid must be of a currency for which an exchange rate is established; otherwise, the lines will not be included in the generation of the CPW. Exchange rates are set on the Market Rates page.

See Also

Chapter 2, "Defining Cash Management Processing Options," Defining Market Rates, page 16

Defining Additional Search Criteria

Access the Additional Search Criteria page (click Additional Search Criteria on the Manual Position Entry page).

From Date and **To Date**	Specify a date range for your data searches. Alternatively, you can specify to search on a particular day of the week, month, or day of the month.

Copying Data Forward

Access the Copy Data Forward page (click Copy on the Manual Position Entry page).

Date From and **Date To**   Enter a date range to copy cells of position entry information into the
                                       manual position worksheet. You can also specify the number of times to
                                       repeat the copied information.

Generating Cash Management Position Reports

When you have created your cash position worksheet, you can generate reports to analyze the position data.

This section lists the pages that are used to generate cash management position reports.

Pages Used to Generate Cash Management Position Reports

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Actual vs Projected by Business Unit	RUN_TRC1004	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by BU	Generate the Actual vs. Projected by Business Unit report (TRC1004 [Crystal] or TRX1004 [BI Publisher]). Use the report to compare actual versus projected cash positions by a specified business unit.
Actual vs Projected by Position	RUN_TRC4060	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by Position	Generate the Actual vs Projected by Position report (TRC4060 [Crystal] or TRX4060 [BI Publisher]). Use the report to compare actual versus projected cash positions by a specified value date.
Actual vs Projected by Account	RUN_TRC1009	Cash Management, Reports, Actual vs.Projected by Account	Generate the Actual vs Projected by Account report (TRC1009 [Crystal] or TRX1009 [BI Publisher]). Use the report (broken down by account) to compare positions.

Chapter 7

Managing Bilateral Netting

This chapter provides an overview of bilateral netting, discusses the prerequisite tasks, and discusses how to:

- Set up bilateral nets.

- Select nets automatically.

- Create nets manually.

- Adjust manually netted information.

- Administer nets.

- Process multicurrency nets.

- Close nets.

- Inquire on netting information.

Understanding the Bilateral Netting Process

Bilateral netting is a process by which two parties (vendor and client to each other) reduce or aggregate the overall number of transactions between them. This decreases actual transaction volume between the two parties. It also decreases the amount of accounting activity and associated business costs (for example, banking fees).

This chapter discusses how to configure, define, and process netting transactions. You can:

- Select the vendors and customers involved in a netting relationship.

- Define the rules, contracts, sequence order, and settlement method of a net.

- Generate inquiries and reports on your netting data.

There are two netting closing methods: *partial* and *full.*

- In partial netting, all items are netted to zero (0), and no payment or receipt of funds is done. You must run Pay Cycle Manager to make any adjustments or changes to the vouchers. Any voucher or item balance that is remaining is handled separately in Payables or Receivables.

  Only the matching balance is paid off during partial netting, leaving some receivables items or payables items open. For example, if the total amount of all payables items participating in a netting cycle is more than the total amount of all receivables items, all receivables items are paid (or closed). The total amount applied to the receivables items is then used to pay individual payables items until this amount reaches zero. Likewise, if the total amount of all receivables items participating in a netting cycle is higher than the total amount of all payables items, all the payables items are paid. The total amount applied to the payables items is then used to pay individual receivables items until this amount reaches zero.

- With full netting, you pay or receive all voucher items that are due.

  During full netting processing, all receivables and payables items participating in the netting cycle are paid, and a new item is created for the remaining balance. This means that if the total amount of all payables items participating in any one netting cycle is more than the total amount of all participating receivables items, the system automatically creates a new receivables item (an invoice). If the total amount of all receivables items is more than the total amount of all payables items, the system creates a new payables item (a voucher).

Note. PeopleSoft delivers and supports only partial bilateral netting functionality. However, you can adapt the application to handle full bilateral netting functionality (though PeopleSoft will not support this configuration). In addition, when using full bilateral netting functionality, you can also optionally activate the value-added tax (VAT) functionality to calculate VAT transactions.

Here is an example of partial bilateral netting:

Company A is both a client and a vendor of Company B and holds Accounts Payable (AP) and Accounts Receivable (AR) line items in relation to Company B. The two companies set up a contractual netting relationship, modifying their typical accounting, to enter into this protocol. They agree on particular intervals to conduct netting and zero out their respective accounts.

Company A's books contain the following line-item amounts:

AP	*AR*
100	150
250	50
Total: 350	Total: 200
<200>	
Net: 150	

Without netting, Company A would have conducted four transactions to address the two Accounts Payable and two Accounts Receivable line items. Instead, their single outstanding balance to pay off and zero out after processing is 150. Using this example, Company B's books would be a mirror image of Company A's.

This is a simple example, but if there are hundreds or thousands of transactions happening between organizations, there can be a considerable decrease in transactional activity and attendant fees. This graphic illustrates the bilateral netting process.
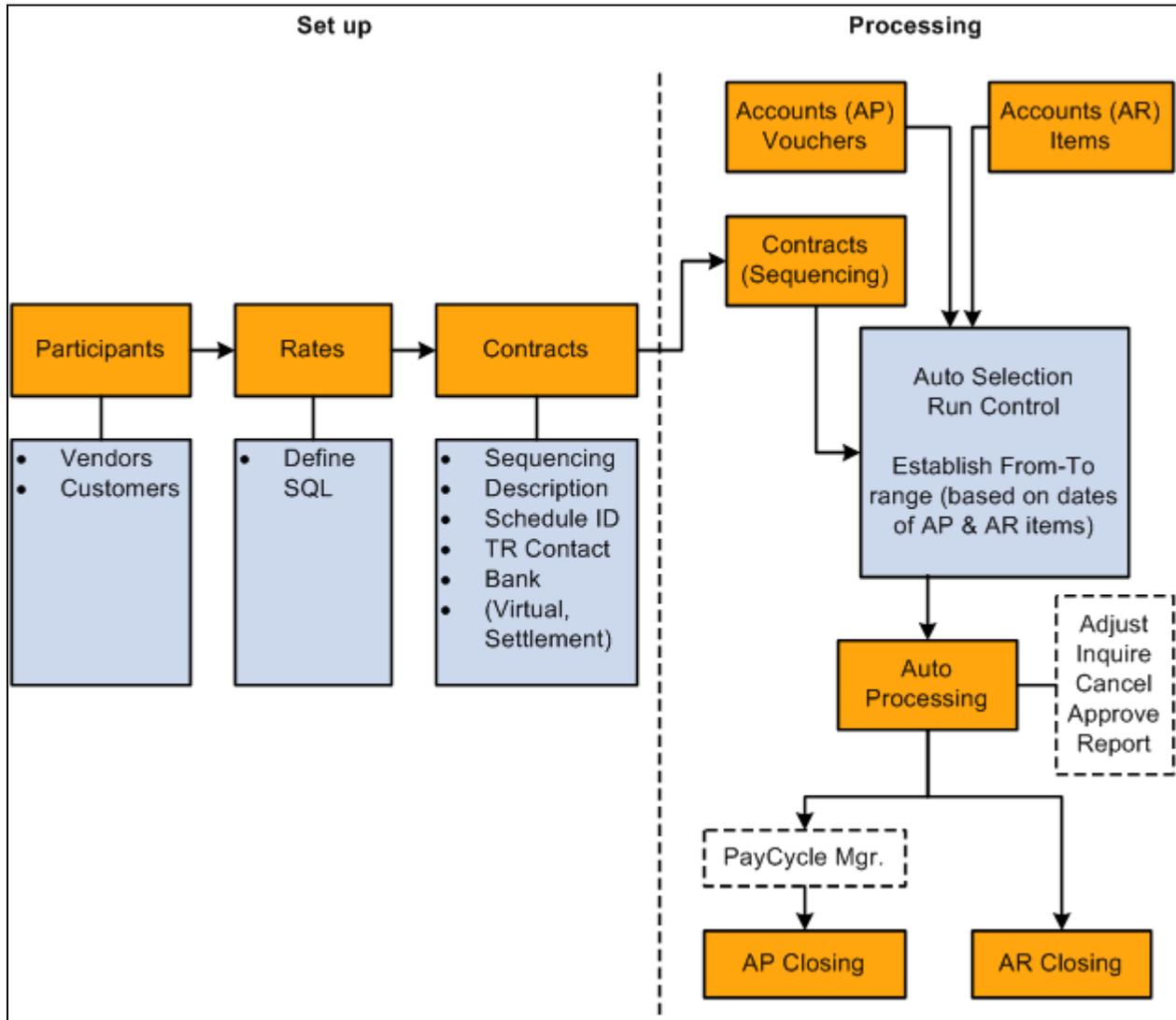
Overview of the bilateral netting process

See Also

PeopleSoft Purchasing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Running Document Tolerances"

PeopleSoft Payables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Processing Pay Cycles"

PeopleSoft Receivables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Entering Payments," Bilateral Netting

Discounts Applied to Netted Transactions

You have the option to process accounts payable discount terms and accounts receivable discount terms as they are defined on each side to netted transactions. You can select a Apply Discount to Transactions check box on the Netting Contracts - Primary Information page or the Manual Select Netting - Manual Selection page.

You can set up Manual Select Netting to manually net the accounts payable and accounts receivables transactions, or you can run the Automatic Netting Selection process (TR_NET_ASEL) to net these transactions for any date that occurs on or before the date that you run the pay cycle. The Netting Auto Selection process stores the discount available amounts related to selected accounts payable vouchers and accounts receivable items based on the selection of the Apply Discount to Transactions check box on the Netting Contracts - Primary Information page.

When you run the Netting Close process, TR_NET_CLOSE, the Pay Cycle Manager calls the Application Engine program (TR_NET_DSCNT) to apply the discounts to the netted transactions. This program updates the netted amounts, balance amounts, and discount applied amounts on the netting tables for Netting Reference IDs that have the apply discount option set. The program will then call on accounts payable to provide the amount of discount taken for the selected accounts payable vouchers and will call on accounts receivable to provide the amount of discount taken for the selected accounts receivables items to complete the Netting Close process.

These are some of the factors that you will want to consider when applying discounts to netted transactions.

1. While applying discounts to netted transactions, all accounts payable vouchers and accounts receivable items associated with a netting reference are evaluated for discount and a discount is applied wherever applicable. The collection of any accounts receivable item balance, whether partial or final, could be impacted by various factors such as the ability to pay by the customer, the amount of liquidity, and more as an event that happens after the process applies the discount to netted transactions and the information stored in the accounts receivable tables is not subject to reconciliation with the information stored in Netting History tables.

2. The selection of the Apply Discount to Transactions check box is applied to both Accounts Payable vouchers and Accounts Receivable items.

3. While applying a discount to netted transactions, accounts payable vouchers and accounts receivable items are not re-sequenced.

4. You cannot partially deselect an accounts payable voucher or an accounts receivable item when you select the Apply Discount Transaction check box.

Here is an example of bilateral netting transactions where discounts have been applied to netting transactions.

Netting Scenario where AR > AP

	Gross Amount	Netting Amount	Balance Amount	Deselected Amount	Earned Discount	Discount Available	Discount Taken	Adjusted Gross Amount	Netting Status
AP Voucher	1500.00	1500.00			Y	30.00			NET

	Gross Amount	*Netting Amount*	*Balance Amount*	*Deselected Amount*	*Earned Discount*	*Discount Available*	*Discount Taken*	*Adjusted Gross Amount*	*Netting Status*
AP Voucher	1000.00	1000.00			Y	20.00			NET
AP Voucher	500.00	500.00			Y	10.00			NET
	3000.00	3000.00				60.00			
AR Item	1500.00	1500.00			Y	30.00			NET
AR Item	2000.00	1500.00	500.00		Y	40.00			SPLIT
AR Item	500.00		500.00		Y	10.00			BALANCE
	4000.00	3000.00	1000.00			80.00			
After Applying Discount	AR>AP								
	Gross Amount	Netting Amount	Balance Amount	Deselected Amount	Earn Discount	Discount Available	Discount Taken	Adjusted Gross Amount	Netting Status
AP Voucher	1500.00	1470.00			Y	30.00	30.00	1470.00	NET
AP Voucher	1000.00	980.00			Y	20.00	20.00	980.00	NET
AP Voucher	500.00	490.00			Y	10.00	10.00	490.00	NET
	3000.00	2940.00				60.00	60.00	2940.00	
AR Item	1500.00				Y	30.00	30.00	1470.00	NET

	Gross Amount	Netting Amount	Balance Amount	Deselected Amount	Earned Discount	Discount Available	Discount Taken	Adjusted Gross Amount	Netting Status
AR Item	2000.00	1470.00	490.00		Y	40.00	40.00	1960.00	SPLIT
AR Item	500.00	147000	490.00		Y	10.00	10.00	490/—	BALANCE
	4000.00	2940.00	980.00			80.00	80.00	3920.00	

Prerequisites

Before using netting, you must define your:

- General Ledger business units.

- Payables Vendors, Vendor IDs, and business units.

- Receivables Customer IDs and business units.

- Market rates and netting account currency codes, to facilitate multicurrency netting.

- Netting accounts.

In addition, before defining a bilateral netting relationship, you must set up the following in Payables and Receivables:

1. Enter a voucher on the Vouchers page in Payables.

2. Enter an invoice on the Online Pending Item Entry page in Receivables or interface an invoice from your billing application into Receivables.

3. Run the Receivables Update process (AR_UPDATE) using the Receivables Update page.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining Netting Accounts

PeopleSoft General Ledger 9.1 PeopleBook, "Defining Your Operational Structure," Defining General Ledger Business Units

PeopleSoft Payables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Entering and Processing Vouchers Online: General Voucher Entry Information"

PeopleSoft Receivables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Posting and Unposting Groups," Running Receivable Update

Common Elements in This Chapter

Apply Discount to Transactions	Select to indicate that the system should consider the discount from the payment terms when calculating netted amounts. .
Closing Method	Select *Partial,* the delivered default value.
Contact	Specify the financial contacts for a netting relationship.
Contract ID	Enter the netting contract identification number.
Customer ID	Enter the unique identifier code for a customer.
Discount Available Amount	Displays the amount of discount that is available for payable vouchers and receivable items. This value is calculated when the Apply Discount to Transactions option is selected.
GL Unit	Enter the General Ledger business unit.
Netting Rule ID	Enter the netting rule identification code.
Participant ID	Enter the netting participant identification code.
Payable Discount Available	Displays the amount of discount that is available for payable vouchers. This value is calculated when the Apply Discount to Transactions option is selected.
Receivable Discount Available	Displays the amount of discount that is available for receivable items. This value is calculated when the Apply Discount to Transactions option is selected.
Remit Vendor	Enter the vendor payee.
Schedule SetID	Select the correct setID to establish the interval when the netting executes.
Settlement Date	Specify the actual date of the settlement payment.
Vendor ID	Enter a unique identifier code for a vendor.

See Also

Setting Up Bilateral Nets

To define netting information, use the following components:

- Netting Contracts component (NET_CONTRACT).

- Netting Exclusion Parameters component (NET_EXCL_PARM).

- Netting Participants component (NET_PARTICIPANT).

- Netting Rules component (NET_NETTING_RULES).

This section discusses the steps to set up bilateral nets:

1. Define participant relationships.

2. (Optional) Add multiple vendors.

3. (Optional) Add multiple customers.

4. Define netting rules with SQL statements.

5. Enter primary information for netting contracts.

6. Enter settlement information for netting contracts.

7. Define voucher netting exclusion parameters.

Understanding Voucher Netting Exclusion

You can define parameters to exclude certain vouchers from payment. The netting exclusion functionality is built to accommodate certain U.S. Federal Government requirements on voucher payments (Financial Systems Integration Office [FSIO] requirement PMC-31, to "allow for the exclusion of payments from agency offset based on user-defined criteria including funding source, object class, vendor type, and vendor number"), but any organization can use this feature to exclude vouchers from netting, based on defined parameters. Although you generally define netting exclusion parameters during the setup phase of voucher payment implementation, you can create or modify these definitions at any time.

This functionality also takes advantage of PeopleSoft's ChartField utility process. As ChartFields can be renamed, and made active or inactive, the setup of these user-defined parameters is dynamic to enable you to select the appropriate ChartField field name and its corresponding values. In addition, you can define multiple sets of exclusion parameters, by defining multiple rows per Exclusion ID, and/or defining multiple Exclusion IDs.

Values entered on the Netting Exclusion Parameters page are stored and used at voucher save time to determine if the voucher should be excluded from the netting process between Payables and Receivables. If an exclusion parameter definition has been created, and a payment falls within the exclusion and effective date parameters, then the payment is excluded from the Payables and Receivables netting process and paid in full. (The system changes the internal voucher netting value to *N* to indicate the voucher is not applicable to netting.) This applies to payments created normally through the PeopleSoft Pay Cycle process.

Though the Exclude from Netting Parameters and the Netting Rule Definition pages share a similar purpose—defining rules or parameters for the voucher netting process—their results are different. The netting exclusion functionality excludes matching vouchers from payment by setting the internal netting flag to N (not applicable for netting). The netting rules functionality excludes vouchers based on the criteria defined in the rules.

Note. Netting exclusion parameters apply to the entire voucher—not just a particular part of the voucher. If a single data element (or "piece") of a voucher meets the exclusion requirements, the entire voucher is excluded. For example, if a voucher has 100 lines with 200 distributions, and only one distribution qualifies for netting exclusion. In this scenario, the entire voucher and payment schedule—all 200 distributions—is excluded from netting.

See Also

PeopleSoft Payables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Establishing Pay Cycles"

PeopleSoft Payables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Processing Pay Cycles"

Prerequisites

To use the Exclude from Netting functionality with vouchers, you must do the following:

• Define vendors as "netting vendors," using the Apply Netting option on the Vendor Information - Payment Options page.

• Create vouchers using defined netting vendors.

See Also

PeopleSoft Payables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Entering and Processing Vouchers Online: General Voucher Entry Information," Scheduling and Creating Voucher Payments for Online Vouchers

Pages Used to Set Up Bilateral Nets

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Netting Participants	NET_PARTICIPANT	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Participants	Define the vendor and customer relationships involved in netting.
Add Multiple Vendors	NET_VENDOR_ADD	Click Add Multiple Vendors on the Participant Definition page.	Search and select multiple vendors associated with a business unit to add to the netting relationship.
Add Multiple Customers	NET_CUSTOMER_ADD	Click Add Multiple Customers on the Participant Definition page.	Search and select multiple customers associated with a business unit to add to the netting relationship.
Netting Rules	NET_NETTING_RULES	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Rules	Enter a SQL statement that will be included into the Application Engine Netting selection logic.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Netting Contracts - Primary Information	NET_CONTRACT_PRIM	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Contracts	Enter primary information for netting contracts.
Netting Contracts - Settlement Information	NET_CONTRACT_STL	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Contracts Select the Settlement Information tab.	Define all settlement instruction information for a netting contract.
Netting Exclusion Parameters	NET_EXCL_PARM	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Exclusion Parameters	Define parameters used to automatically exclude certain payments from the AP and AR netting process.

Defining Participant Relationships

Access the Netting Participants page (Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Participants).

Netting Participants page

GL Unit (General Ledger business unit)	For reporting purposes, you must select the unit that is targeted by these transactions, because the transactions affect balances at the general ledger level.

Vendors

AP Unit (Payables business unit)	Select the unit that houses the vendors that are entering the netting relationship, and specify the Vendor ID.
Add Multiple Vendors	Click to access the Add Multiple Vendors page, and make this relationship a one-to-many or many-to-many relationship (for example, you might want to net the transactions of subsidiaries to a corporation).

Customers

AR Unit (Receivables business unit)	Select the unit that houses the customers that are entering the netting relationship, and specify the Customer ID.
Add Multiple Customers	Click to access the Add Multiple Customers page, and make this relationship a one-to-many or many-to-many relationship (for example, you might want to net the transactions of subsidiaries to a corporation).

Adding Multiple Vendors

Access the Add Multiple Vendors page (click the Add Multiple Vendors link on the Netting Participants page).

Add Multiple Vendors page

AP Unit	Specify a business unit from which to select vendors.
Add Vendors	Select vendors and click this button to add them as participants.

Adding Multiple Customers

Access the Add Multiple Customers page (click the Add Multiple Customers link on the Netting Participants page).

Add Multiple Customers page

AR Unit	Specify a business unit from which to select customers.
Add Customers	Select customers and click this button to add them as participants.

Defining Netting Rules with SQL Statements

Access the Netting Rules page (Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Rules).

Netting Rules page

Receivable SQL and **Payable SQL**	Enter the appropriate SQL statements to set up the mechanics of the net, and to further define and/or limit which open items are selected. For example, `where I.DEPARTMENT equals 'ABC'`.
(comments icon)	Click to add comments regarding SQL statements for the respective (Receivable or Payable) edit box.

Entering Primary Information for Netting Contracts

Access the Netting Contracts - Primary Information page (Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Contracts, Primary Information).

Netting Contracts - Primary Information page

Primary Information

Pre Approval Flag	Select to indicate the netting contract is already approved.
Netting Advice Required	Select to notify a contact when netting is run.
Apply Discount to Transactions	Select to indicate that the system should consider the discount from the payment terms when calculating netted amounts.
Schedules	Specify the netting run schedule for the specified Schedule SetID.
	Click View Participants to view participants of the specified Participant ID.
	Click View Rules to view rules of the specified Netting Rule ID.
	Click View Contacts to view contact information for the specified Contact ID.
	Click View Schedules to view schedule information for the specified Schedule.

See Also

Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Defining Participant Relationships, page 112

Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Defining Netting Rules with SQL Statements, page 114

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up Banks," Defining Financial Contacts

Entering Settlement Information for Netting Contracts

Access the Netting Contracts - Settlement Information page (Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Contracts, Settlement Information).

Netting Contracts - Settlement Information page

Netting Bank SetID	Assign a netting SetID; then select the Bank and Account for the netting activities. The netting bank is a virtual bank account: no funds are actually paid into or out of the netting account. It is debited and credited by the netted amount of the AP and AR transactions.
Disb Bank SetID (disbursement bank setID)	Select from the available external banks, and specify the settle through Bank and Account.
Vendor SetID	Assign a vendor SetID. In the Vendor field, designate the vendor involved in the net and assign a Location and Seq Nbr (sequence number). You enter the vendor ID and sequence number to associate the default bank with that vendor (this is required to support certain payment methods).
Payment Method	For the Payables group box, specify if payments are submitted by *Automated Clearing House, Direct Debit, EFT, Manual Check, System Check,* or *Wire Report.*
	For the Receivables group box, specify if payments are received by *Check (Check, EFT, etc.), Direct Debit,* or *Draft.*

Sequence	Select the order in which balances will net, either *By Account Date (FIFO)* (first in first out), *By Accounting Date (LIFO)* (last in first out), *By Due Date (FIFO),By Due Date (LIFO),By Voucher,Highest Gross Balance,* or *Smallest Gross Balance.*
Deposit Unit	Define which business unit will receive payment after the net.
	Click View Netting Account to view detailed information for the specified netting account.
	Click View Disbursement Bank to view detailed information for the specified external bank account.
	Click View Vendor Bank to view detailed information for the vendor location.

Excluding Vouchers from Netting

Access the Netting Exclusion Parameters page (Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Exclusion Parameters).

Select the parameter for excluding the voucher.

When you select Vendor ID, also specify a Vendor name and optionally, a Location.

When you select Vendor Classification, also select a Classification option of *Attorney,Employee,HRMS,* or *Supplier.*

In the ChartField Exclusion Parameters region, specify a ChartField and corresponding value on which to base the netting exclusion.

Note. You can only specify one value per defined ChartField name.

Selecting Nets Automatically

Define processing parameters and automatically select your nets using the Automatic Netting Selection process (TR_NET_ASEL).

Pages Used to Automatically Select Nets

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Navigation*	*Usage*
Automatic Netting Selection	NET_AUTO_RQST	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Automatic Netting Selection, Automatic Netting Selection	Set up an automatic process to run bilateral nets.

Generating the Automatic Netting Selection Process

Access the Automatic Netting Selection page (Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Automatic Netting Selection, Automatic Netting Selection).

Automatic Netting Selection page

Contracts for this Schedule	Click to access the Review Netting Contracts page, and view all contracts associated with the specified Schedule ID.
Netting Inquiry	Click to access the Netting Inquiry page, and view information for the associated Netting Reference ID.

When the Automatic Netting Selection process is complete, use the Review Multiple Netting page to verify and modify the netted information.

See Also

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler

Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Administering Nets, page 131

Creating Nets Manually

This section discusses how to:

1. Enter primary netting information.

2. Define the settlement instructions.

3. Set up the payables leg.

4. (Optional) Add multiple vouchers to the payables leg.

5. Set up the receivables leg.

6. (Optional) Add multiple items to the receivables leg.

Common Elements in This Section

Add Multiple Items   Click to add multiple vouchers from a specified business Unit and Vendor ID to your bilateral net.

Request Status   Displays either *WIP* (work in progress) or *Submitted.*

Total AP Txns (transactions)   Total number of Payables transaction items.

Total AR Txns (transactions)   Total number of Receivables transaction items.

Pages Used to Manually Create Nets

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Navigation*	*Usage*
Manual Selection	NET_MANUAL_RQST	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Manual Selection	Enter primary information.
Manual Select Netting - Settlement Inst (settlement instructions)	NET_MANUAL_RQST1	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Settlement Inst	Set up your settlement instructions.
Manual Select Netting - Payables	NET_MAN_RQST_AP	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Payables	Set up payables for manual netting.
Enter Manual Selection (vouchers)	NET_VOUCHER_ADD	Click the Add Multiple Vouchers link on the Manual Select Netting - Payables page.	Add multiple vouchers to payables for manual netting.
Manual Select Netting - Receivables	NET_MAN_RQST_AR	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Receivables	Set up receivables for manual netting.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Enter Manual Selection (items)	NET_ITEM_ADD	Click the Add Multiple Items link on the Manual Select Netting - Receivables page.	Add multiple items to receivables for manual netting.

Entering Primary Information

Access the Manual Selection page (Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Manual Selection).

Manual Selection page

Netting Date   Displays the effective date of the net.

Netting Currency   Select a netting currency. The system converts all amounts and displays them in this defined netting currency.

Base Currency   Displays the base currency of the selected GL Unit.

Submit   Click to submit the net.

                        Note. Prior to submitting the net, you must complete the other pages in this component.

Defining Settlement Instructions

Access the Manual Select Netting - Settlement Instructions page (Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Settlement Inst).

Manual Select Netting - Settlement Inst (instructions) page

Netting Bank	Click to select your netting bank SetID, and specify the bank and account.
Disbursement Bank	Click to select your disbursement bank ID, and specify the bank and account.
Vendor Bank	Click the link to select your vendor bank ID. Enter the Vendor,Location, and Sequence Nbr (sequence number).
Payment Method-Payable	Select *Automated Clearing House,Direct Debit,EFT,Manual Check, System Check,* or *Wire Report.*
Payment Method-Receivable	Select *Check,Direct Debit,* or *Draft.*
Deposit Unit	Define which business unit receives payment after the net.

See Also

Setting Up Payables for Manual Netting

Access the Manual Select Netting - Payables page (Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Payables).

Manual Select Netting - Payables page

 Click Voucher Detail to access the Payables Voucher Detail page and view information for the voucher line item.

Refresh When you are finished entering payable transaction items, click to update Total Payment Amount.

Adding Multiple Vouchers to Payables for Manual Netting

Access the Enter Manual Selection (vouchers) page (click the Add Multiple Vouchers link on the Manual Select Netting - Payables page).

After you enter a business unit and vendor ID, select each voucher that you want to add and click Add.

Setting Up Receivables for Manual Netting

Access the Manual Select Netting - Receivables page (Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Receivables).

Manual Select Netting - Receivables page

	Click Show Item Detail to access the Receivables Item Maintenance page, and view information for the receivables line item.
Refresh	When you are finished entering receivable transaction items, to update Total Receipt Amount.

Adding Multiple Items Receivables for Manual Netting

Access the Enter Manual Selection (items) page (click the Add Multiple Items link on the Manual Select Netting - Receivables page).

After you enter a business Unit and Customer ID, select each item that you want to add and click Add.

Adjusting Manually Netted Information

After creating manual bilateral nets you'll need to maintain them. Depending on your User ID and security settings, you can edit certain enabled fields on each page. These pages are similar to the manual net creation procedure pages.

This section discusses how to:

1. Adjust manual net information.

2. Adjust settlement instructions.

3. Adjust payables voucher information.

4. Adjust receivables item information.

See Also

Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Creating Nets Manually, page 119

Common Elements Used in This Section

Gross Amount   Displays the Gross amount, which must equal the netting amount plus balance amount plus deselected amount. However, you can only populate two of these three fields to equal the gross amount, not all three.

DeSelected Payable   Displays the payables amount subtracted from the gross amount.

DeSelected Receivable   Displays the receivables amount subtracted from the gross amount.

Pages Used to Adjust Manually Netted Information

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Manual Adjustment	NET_MANUAL_ADJUST	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Manual Adjustment	Adjust manual net information.
Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr (instructions)	NET_MANUAL_ADJUST1	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Settlement Instr	Adjust settlement instructions .
Adjust Netting - Payables	NET_MAN_ADJUST_AP	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Payables	Adjust payables voucher information.
Adjust Netting - Receivables	NET_MAN_ADJUST_AR	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Receivables	Adjust receivables item information.

Adjusting Manual Net Information

Access the Manual Adjustment page (Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Manual Adjustment).

Manual Adjustment page

| **Process Type** | Indicates whether the net was processed by either *Automatic* or *Manual* method. |

Netting Results Payable

The system calculates the amounts based on the transaction entries on the Payables page.

| **Netted Payable** | Displays the netting amount total. |

| **Payable Balance** | Displays the balance amount total. |

| **DeSelected Payable** | Displays the deselected amount total. |

Netting Results Receivable

The system calculates the amounts displayed based on the transaction entries on the Receivables page.

| **Netted Receivable** | Displays the netting amount total. |

| **Receivable Balance** | Displays the balance amount total. |

| **DeSelected Receivable** | Displays the deselected amount total. |

See Also

Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Creating Nets Manually, page 119

Adjusting Settlement Instructions

Access the Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr page (Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Settlement Instr).

Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr (instructions) page

See Also

Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Entering Settlement Information for Netting Contracts, page 117

Adjusting Payables Voucher Information

Access the Adjust Netting - Payables page (Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Payables).

Adjust Netting - Payables page

Note. You can only add transaction items. You cannot delete existing or added transactions.

See Also

Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Setting Up Payables for Manual Netting, page 123

Adjusting Receivables Item Information

Access the Adjust Netting - Receivables page (Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Receivables).

Adjust Netting - Receivables page

Note. You can only add transaction items—you can't delete existing or added transactions.

See Also

Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Setting Up Receivables for Manual Netting, page 123

Processing Multicurrency Nets

This section provides an overview of the multicurrency netting functionality, and discusses how to process multicurrency nets.

Multicurrency Netting Functionality

PeopleSoft netting includes functionality to automatically adjust netted non-base currency accounting entries to ensure that the netting bank entries are in balance. This functionality requires that you setup certain pages and currency default values.

When you have established the necessary currency codes, no further input is required because the system automatically evaluates and adjusts the necessary netting accounting entries.

The adjustment functionality occurs during the Netting Close process (TR_NET_CLOSE), which the system calls from the Pay Cycle Selection process (AP_PAYSELECT). The Netting Close process analyzes if voucher and item accounting entries meet certain criteria. For example, if netting currency is greater than or less than the base currency. If the entries match the criteria, the Netting Close process adjusts them by updating the AR (PAYMENT_ITEM) and AP (PAYMENT_VCHR_XREF, VOUCHER, VOUCHER_LINE, DISTRIB_LINE) information prior to posting in AP and AR. Posting creates accounting entries, therefore, the netting adjustment occurs prior to posting to avoid the additional work of adjusting accounting entries.

Here is an example of the netting adjustment functionality when the net involves Japanese yen (JPY) and United States dollars (USD):

*   Netting Base Amount = 10000 JPY.

*   Netting Foreign Amount = 100 USD.

*   Rate = 100 JPY/USD.

*   Summarized receivables amount for netting = 100 USD (10001 JPY).

*   Summarized payables amount for netting = 100 USD (9999 JPY).

Given the above, the system calculates that:

*   The Netting Base Amount of 10000 JPY is less than the receivables amount of 10001 JPY, and subtracts 1 JPY from the receivables total.

*   The Netting Base Amount of 10000 JPY is greater than the payables amount of 9999 JPY, and adds 1 JPY to the payables total.

Prerequisites

If you are netting bank accounts that are defined with different currencies, you must ensure that:

*   You have established an exchange rate between two different currency codes on the Market Rates page.

• You have established as many valid currencies as needed by the specific netting bank account on the Netting Accounts - Valid Currencies (BANK_ACCT_CURR_SEC) page. For example, if you are netting between two accounts (one using JPY, one using USD) you must define both JPY and USD as valid currencies for both accounts.

See Also

Chapter 2, "Defining Cash Management Processing Options," Defining Market Rates, page 16

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining Netting Accounts

Processing Multicurrency Nets

To process multicurrency nets:

1. For the AP Voucher Entry confirm that:

   • You define the Curr (currency) field on the Invoice Information page with the convert into currency.

   • You define the Payment Currency field on the Invoice Information - Payments: Payment Options page with the convert into currency.

2. Approve the AP Voucher, but do not post it.

3. For the AR Item Entry confirm that:

   • You define the Control Currency field on the Group Control page with the convert into currency.

   • You define the Currency field on the Pending Item 1 page with the convert into currency.

4. Post the AR vouchers using the Group Control - Group Action page. (You can post AR vouchers as they are not evaluated by the Net Close process.)

5. Run the Receivable Update process (AR_UPDATE).

6. Create a manual net using the Manual Netting pages, being sure to define the Netting Currency field with the convert into currency. When you complete creating the manual net, click Submit.

7. Approve the multicurrency net using the Review Multiple Netting page.

8. Establish voucher payment selection criteria for the pay cycle using the Payment Selection Criteria page.

9. Process the pay cycle and create the payment using the Pay Cycle Manager page.

10. Post the voucher using the Payment Posting Request page.

11. Run the Receivable Update process (AR_UPDATE) again to close the receivables nets.

12. Review the resulting accounting entry and payment information on the following pages:

- (AP) Voucher Accounting Entries

- (AR) Group Control - Accounting Entries

- Payment Control - Accounting Entries

Note. Remember that any AP vouchers that are posted before the Netting Close process runs *do not* encounter the rounding analysis of the netting adjustment process. Their associated accounting entries are not adjusted.

See Also

Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Administering Nets, page 131

Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Creating Nets Manually, page 119

Chapter 7, "Managing Bilateral Netting," Closing Nets, page 133

PeopleSoft Payables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Entering and Processing Vouchers Online: General Voucher Entry Information," Entering Invoice Information for Online Vouchers

PeopleSoft Payables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Running Voucher and Payment Posting"

PeopleSoft Payables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Reviewing Voucher, Payment, and Vendor Information," Reviewing Voucher Information

PeopleSoft Receivables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Entering Pending Items"

PeopleSoft Receivables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Posting and Unposting Groups"

PeopleSoft Receivables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Entering Pending Items"

PeopleSoft Receivables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Maintaining and Reviewing Item Information," Changing and Reviewing Item Information

---

Administering Nets

This section discusses how to:

- Approve nets.

- Cancel nets.

Pages Used to Administer Nets

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Approve Netting	NET_NETTING_ADMIN	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Approve Netting, Approve Netting	Approve nets.
Cancel Netting	NET_NETTING_ADMIN	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Cancel Netting, Cancel Netting	Cancel nets.

Approving Nets

Access the Approve Netting page (Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Approve Netting, Approve Netting).

Approve Netting page

Search	Specify search criteria and click the button to retrieve data on multiple nets. Your results appear in the Selected Nets grid.
Status	Select from *Approved,Cancelled,Closed,* or *Open*.
Reference	Click the link to access the bilateral netting pages, and modify transaction information.
✏	Click to adjust the selected net.
Select	Select an item's check box, then approve or cancel net. The selected net(s) status changes to *Approved* or *Cancelled*. Once netting contracts are approved, they are "locked" and can't be edited. Select Re-Open to unlock approved netting contracts for modifications.

Canceling Nets

Access the Cancel Netting page (Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Cancel Netting, Cancel Netting).

Cancel Netting page

Page fields and functionality are similar to those discussed in Administering Nets. However, you can only cancel nets with an *Open* Status.

See Also

Closing Nets

Once you select (by manual or automatic methods) and approve nets, you close them in both Payables and Receivables.

You close payables nets by creating payment selection criteria and running Pay Cycle Manager. If there is any remaining payables net balance (balance is less than or greater than zero), you must create a new payment selection criteria and run Pay Cycle Manager again.

To close receivables nets, you must run the Request Receivables Update process, which updates the customer information with the invoice netting payment created in the netting process.

The Net Closing Process also contains the multicurrency net adjustment functionality. For nets involving multiple currencies this functionality evaluates if the payables and receivables accounting entries are in balance, given a defined currency conversion rate. The system then automatically adjusts them as necessary prior to payables and receivables posting.

See Also

PeopleSoft Purchasing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Running Document Tolerances"

PeopleSoft Payables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Processing Pay Cycles"

PeopleSoft Receivables 9.1 PeopleBook, "Entering Payments," Bilateral Netting

Understanding the Net Closing Process in Pay Cycle Manager

Here is a more detailed look at the Netting Closing Application Engine processes, (TR_NET_CLOSE) and (TR_NET_ARCLS), which launch from Pay Cycle Manager (AP_APY2015). These processes close the netting population of the AR and AP transactions that are selected for netting. Closing refers to updating the transactions in the netting tables as well as updating transactions in the AP and AR tables. Inserts are done in certain situations. (For example, if an AP payment is greater than the AR balance, PeopleSoft will insert a new line in AP for the remaining balance not offset by the receivable amount.)

Inquiring on Bilateral Nets

You can inquire on your bilateral netting contract and relationship information.

Pages Used to Inquire on Bilateral Nets

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Review Netting Contracts	NET_SCHD_CNTRC	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Review Netting Contracts, Review Netting Contracts	Search your netting data by netting contract.
Netting Inquiry	NET_INQUIRY_HDR	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Review Single Netting, Netting Inquiry	Review information on a single netting relationship.
Review Multiple Netting	NET_NETTING_ADMIN	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Review Multiple Netting, Review Multiple Netting	Review information on multiple netting contracts.

Chapter 8

Performing Cash Sweep to Manage Liquidity

This chapter presents an overview of the cash sweep functionality and discusses how to:

* Define and approve a cash sweep structure.

* Process cash sweep and review the results.

* Generate cash sweep reports

Understanding Cash Sweep Functionality

Cash Sweep enables you to perform a sweep across multiple external bank accounts to manage the liquidity in your organization. Cash Sweep leverages the functionality of these PeopleSoft Treasury features:

* External bank accounts.

* Cash position.

* Fund transfers - Bank account and EFT (electronic fund transfer) requests.

The Cash Sweep process flow includes these steps:

1. Set up the cash sweep structure.

   You set up the cash sweep structure across multiple external bank accounts. The cash sweep structure consists of a master account, overall processing attributes, sub-accounts and sub-account processing attributes.

2. Approve the cash sweep structure.

   You must approve any new or modified cash sweep structure before you can run the Cash Sweep process (TR_CSH_SWEEP).

3. Generate the Cash Position worksheet.

4. Run the Cash Sweep process.

5. Review and update the cash sweep results.

6. Generate transfers using bank transfer or EFT request.

7. Generate cash sweep reports.
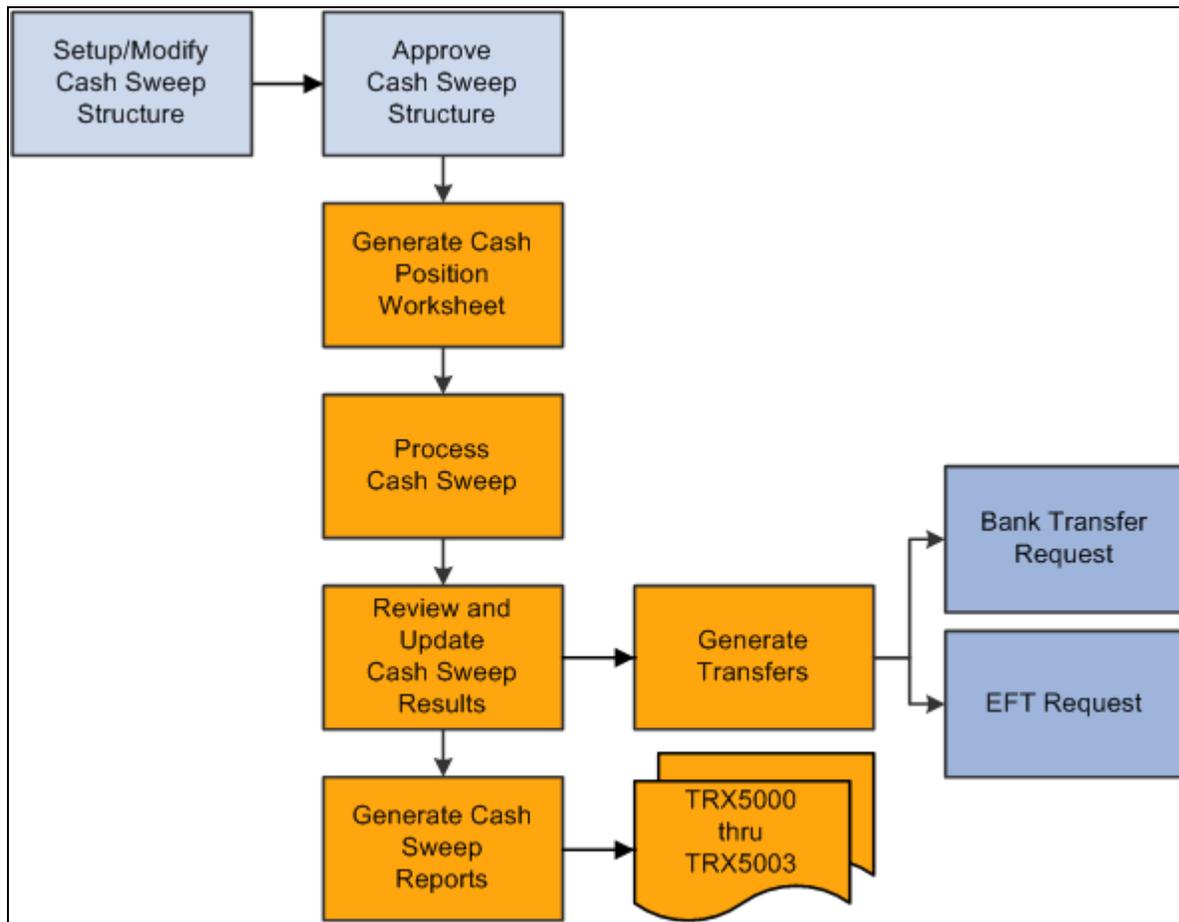
Cash Sweep Process Flow

Prerequisites

Complete these prerequisites prior to setting up a cash sweep structure:

- Set up external bank accounts.

- Set up internal bank accounts.

- Set up bank transfer templates.

- Set up EFT templates.

- Define cash position trees.

Defining and Approving a Cash Sweep Structure

This section presents an overview of a cash sweep structure and discusses how to:

- Define a cash sweep structure.

- Set up cash sweep subaccounts.

- Approve a cash sweep structure and run the Cash Sweep process.

Overview of a Cash Sweep Structure

To perform a cash sweep, you must set up an active physical cash sweep structure as of a specified effective date. You can update this structure and change the effective date to keep track of any changes you make.

You set up a physical cash sweep structure across multiple external bank accounts. You identify an external bank account as the master bank account for this cash sweep structure and identify one or more sub-accounts. You can only select one master bank account for each physical cash sweep structure. However, you can select the same external bank account as the master bank account across multiple physical cash sweep structures. When you select a master bank and bank account for a cash sweep structure, the sweep currency and business unit used to set up the bank account display as default values for the cash sweep structure. You cannot change these values unless you select a different bank account.

The activity type that you select for a physical cash sweep structure determines how the funds will be moved. Activity types are:

- Funding

  This activity type moves funds out of the master bank account to the selected sub bank accounts.

- Concentration

  This activity type moves funds out of selected sub bank accounts to the master bank account.

- Bidirectional

  This activity type moves funds into and out of the master bank account depending on the of the calculated transfer amount. If the cash position of the subaccount is negative, Cash Sweep assumes that here is a shortage of funds in the subaccount and moves funds from the master bank account to the subaccount. If the cash position of the subaccount is positive, Cash Sweep assumes that there is a surplus of funds and moves funds from the subaccount to the master bank account. Negative balances in subaccounts are Funded and positive balances in subaccounts are Concentrated.

  Example 1: When activity type is bidirectional and the sub bank account cash position is - 12, 000 USD, Cash Sweep understands that the funds need to be moved from the master bank account to the sub bank account.

  Example 2: When the activity type is bidirectional and the sub bank account cash position is + 12, 000 USD, Cash Sweep understands that the funds need to be moved from the sub bank account to the master bank account.

You identify either your organization or the bank as the initiator of the cash sweep. When an organization initiates the cash sweep the Auto Generate Transfers check box is enabled. You select this check box to enable the system to automatically generate the EFT requests and bank transfers when the Cash Sweep (TR_CSH_SWEEP) process is run. If you select an organization and do not select this check box, then you must access the Request Cash Sweep component and perform the transfers manually. However, frequently an organization does not want to initially generate the EFT requests and bank transfers automatically (deselect the check box) so that it can review the recommended transfer amount for each cash sweep structure and make any necessary changes. Once the organization is satisfied with the recommended transfer amount, it can select the Auto Generate Transfers check box and the system will automatically generate the EFT requests and bank transfers when the Cash Sweep process is run. The Auto Generate Transfers check box is not selected if a bank initiates the cash sweep.

When the bank is the initiator of the cash sweep, the bank moves the funds, but the system only stores the recommended transfer amounts without creating the actual EFT requests or bank transfers.

You select a market index and rate type to assist in identifying the exchange rate to apply to the cash sweep when cash sweep currency is different from cash position currency.

Important! Make sure that the Exchange Rate tables are updated with the appropriate exchange rates.

You can select cash sweep rounding options or choose not to round the physical cash sweep amounts. Rounding will never break below the target balance defined on external bank account definition.

You can select one of the following rounding options:

- *Nearest*

  Selecting this value will increase or decrease the physical cash sweep amount to the closest multiple specified. For example, if the physical sweep/concentration amount of 1,234,567.87 USD is rounded to the nearest hundreds, the amount will be calculated as 1,234,600.00 USD. However, if a physical sweep/concentration amount of 1,234,347.87 USD is rounded to the nearest hundreds, the amount will be 1,234,300.00 USD.

- *None*

  Rounding will not be performed when you select this value.

- *Round Down*

  Selecting this value will decrease the physical cash sweep amount to the nearest multiple specified. For example, if the physical sweep/concentration amount of 1,234,567.87 USD rounded down to hundreds, the amount will be calculated as 1,234,500.00 USD.

- *Round Up*

  Round up increases the physical cash sweep amount to the nearest multiple specified. For example, if the physical cash sweep amount of 1,234,567.87 USD is rounded up to hundreds, the amount will be calculated as 1,234,600.00 USD.

If you select *Nearest, Round Down,* or *Round Up* as a rounding option, you must select one of these rounding factors:

- Units (1)

- Tens (10)

- Hundreds (100)

- Thousands (1,000)

- Ten thousands (10,000)

- Hundred thousands (100,000)

- Millions (1,000,000)

- Ten Millions (10,000,000)

You select an active cash position tree name and tree node for each cash sweep structure. The tree nodes can be recursive or nonrecursive.

You can identify one or more external bank accounts as sub bank accounts on a physical cash sweep structure. The system issues a warning message to alert the user that setting an external bank account as sub bank account on multiple physical cash sweep structures could result in a sub bank account that is overdrawn. Duplicate sub bank accounts in the same cash sweep structure are not permitted. You also cannot identify the same external bank account as a master bank account and a sub bank account in the same physical cash sweep structure. However, you can identify an external bank account as a sub bank account in one physical cash sweep structure, and as a master bank account in another physical cash sweep structure. You can pool multiple subaccounts for a cash sweep.

You select a cash position tree node for each subaccount. The master bank account and any sub bank accounts identified for each cash sweep structure must share the same cash position tree.

Important! It is critical that you correctly map the cash position tree nodes to the master bank accounts and subaccounts on the cash sweep structure.

You can select *EFT Transfer* or *Bank Transfer* as the Transfer Class for each subaccount. Selecting either transfer class moves funds across bank accounts. However, if you select Organization as the Initiator on the Cash Sweep Structure page, you must select one of these values for each subaccount that you establish.

You can select a Funding or Concentration template to apply to each subaccount. These templates enable you to set up transactions in advance with parties with which you conduct regular, specific transactions. You select a *Funding Template* for each subaccount if you selected *Funding* or *Bi-Directional* as the activity type on the Cash Sweep Structure page. You select the *Concentration Template* if you selected *Concentration* or *Bi-Directional* as the activity type.

Important! It is critical that you define and map the appropriate template with each subaccount. Mapping these templates incorrectly can result in transfer errors when the Cash Sweep process is run.

You specify the minimum amount and a maximum amount to transfer during the Cash Sweep process between a master bank account. A zero amount indicates that there is no minimum amount limit. Specific rules dictate how the minimum and maximum transfer amounts either do or do not affect the calculated amount that the cash sweep process generates:

• Minimum Transfer Amount

The minimum amount to be transferred during a cash sweep process between Master Bank Account and Sub Bank Account. A zero amount indicates that there is no minimum amount limit.

When the activity type is Funding and calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, cash sweep process sets the calculated transfer amount to the minimum transfer amount.

When the activity type is Concentration and the calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, cash sweep process sets the calculated transfer amount to zero. There are not enough funds in the sub-account to meet the minimum transfer amount and still maintain its target balance, so no amount is set to transfer.

• Maximum Transfer Amount

The maximum amount to be transferred during a cash sweep process between Master Bank Account and Sub Bank Account. A zero amount indicates that there is no maximum amount limit.

The maximum transfer amount rule is the same for both Funding and Concentration activity types. During the cash sweep process if the calculated transfer amount is greater than the maximum transfer amount, then the calculated transfer amount is set to the maximum transfer amount.

You can select an Exclude check box on the Cash Sweep Structure page to temporarily prevent a subaccount row from being included in the Cash Sweep Process. Once you remove the check mark, the row will be included the next time the Cash Sweep Process is run.

Once you have set up and saved a cash sweep structure, a designated approver must approve the cash sweep structure using the Cash Sweep Structure Approval component before running the Cash Sweep process. The status of a cash sweep structure can be pending, approved, or denied. If the approver either approves or denies approval of the cash sweep structure, you can modify the cash sweep structure without having to leave the Approve Cash Sweep Structure page . When you modify an approved or denied cash sweep structure and save it, the status of the cash sweep structure changes to *pending* until the designated approver approves or denies it again. If the structure is approved, it is ready for the Cash Sweep Calculations process to be run. When a designated approver approves or denies a cash sweep structure, the user ID of the approver and the date that the structure was approved or denied appears on the Approve Cash Sweep Structure page. An assigned user other than the user who entered the Cash Sweep Structure must approve all changes before you can run the Cash Sweep Calculations process.

Important! The user who is assigned to approve a cash sweep structure must be someone other than the user who enters or modifies the cash sweep structure.

See

Pages Used to Define and Approve a Cash Sweep Structure

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Cash Sweep Structure	CSH_SWEEP_DEFN	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Define Cash Sweep Structure, Cash Sweep Structure	Define the master bank account, currency, and cash position tree and node for a physical cash sweep. Set up cash sweep subaccounts.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Approve Cash Sweep Structure	CSH_SWEEP_APPR	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Approve Cash Sweep Structure	Approve or deny selected cash sweep structures.

Defining a Cash Sweep Structure

Access the Cash Sweep Structure page (Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Define Cash Sweep Structure, Cash Sweep Structure).

Cash Sweep Structure page

Sweep ID   Select the appropriate setID and enter a value to identify the cash sweep structure that you are creating on the Cash Sweep Structure – Add a New Value page.

Sweep Type   Accept the system-defined default value, Physical on the Cash Sweep Structure – Add a New Value page. A physical cash sweep indicates movement between external bank accounts selected for this cash sweep structure.

Master Bank Code   Select the bank that has the master bank account that you want to assign to this cash sweep structure. The Bank ID field is updated based on the code you select.

Master Bank Account   Select the bank account that you want to use to transfer funds to subaccounts or to concentrate funds from subaccounts. The Bank Account # (number), Sweep Currency, and Business Unit values associated with the selected bank account appear as defaults on the page and are derived from the account selected as the master bank account. This business unit is used as the anchor business unit when the cash sweep transfers are performed.

Activity Type   Select one of these activity types to move funds for this cash sweep structure. This field is required for both organization and bank initiated cash sweeps.

- *Bi-Directional*

    Moves funds into and out of the master bank account depending on the of the calculated transfer amount. If the cash position of the subaccount is negative, Cash Sweep assumes that here is a shortage of funds in the subaccount and moves funds from the master bank account to the subaccount. If the cash position of the subaccount is positive, Cash Sweep assumes that there is a surplus of funds and moves funds from the subaccount to the master bank account. Negative balances in subaccounts are Funded and positive balances in subaccounts are Concentrated.

- *Concentration*

    Moves funds out of sub bank accounts to the master bank account.

- *Funding*

    Moves funds out of the master bank account to the sub bank accounts.

Initiated By   Select one of these values as the initiator of the cash sweep.

- *Organization*

    Indicates that your organization will create the bank transfers and EFT requests.

- *Bank*

    Indicates that the bank will make the fund movement. The accounting will come from the bank statement. The system will only store the recommended transfer amounts, and will not create the actual EFT requests or bank transfers.

Auto-Generate Transfers   Select this check box to enable the system to automatically generate EFT (electronic file transfer) requests and bank transfers for the recommended transfer amount when you run the Cash Sweep process.

                                     If you leave this check box blank, then you must access the Cash Sweep Results page to initiate the creation of EFT requests and bank transfers.

Index	The default value is derived from the selected master bank account . Selecting a market rate from the market rate index assists in identifying the exchange rate to apply to the cash sweep when the cash sweep currency is different from the cash position currency.
Rate Type	The default value is derived from the selected master bank account. Selecting a rate type assists in identifying the exchange rate to apply to the cash sweep when cash sweep currency is different from the cash position currency.
Round Option	Select one of these options to determine how you want to round the transfer amount:

- *Nearest*

   Rounds either up or down to the nearest round factor.

- *None*

- *Round Down*

- *Round Up*

Round Factor	Select one of these options to determine how the amount will be rounded.

- *1*

- *1,000,000*

- *10,000*

- *10*

- *10,000*

- *10,000,000*

- *100*

- *100,000*

Note. The Round Factor is required unless the value selected for the Round Option is *None.*

Tree Name	You must select a Cash Position Tree to apply to this cash sweep.
Tree Node	You must select a Cash Position Tree Node to apply to this cash sweep. The master bank account and each of the sub bank accounts identified in each physical cash sweep structure should share the same cash position tree.

Important! When selecting a cash position tree node, take note of the associated position sources and the resulting position calculation amount.

Audit Information

The system tracks and displays this information about a selected cash structure:

- Date Created

  Identifies when the cash sweep structure was created.

- Created By

  Identifies the user who created the cash sweep structure.

- Date Modified

  Identifies the last date that the cash sweep structure was modified.

- Modified By

  Identifies the last person who modified the cash sweep structure

- Date Approved

  Identifies the date that the cash sweep structure was approved.

- Approved By

  Identifies the user who approved the cash sweep structure.

- Approval Status

  Identifies the cash sweep structure as *Pending, Approved,* or *Denied.*

Cash Sweep Details – Subaccounts Information

Select the Cash Sweep Details – Sub Accounts tab.

Bank SetID, Bank Code and **Bank Account**	Select a bank setID, bank code, and bank account for each subaccount that you set up for this physical cash sweep structure.
Tree Node	Select a cash position tree node for each subaccount that you set up.
	The cash position tree node that you select for each subaccount must share the same cash position tree as the master account selected for this physical cash sweep structure.
Transfer Class	Select one of these values to transfer the physical cash sweep amount.
	• *EFT Transfer*
	• *Bank Transfer*
	Note. You must select one of these values if you selected *Organization* as the Initiator of the physical cash sweep on the Cash Sweep Definition page.

Funding Template   Select a funding template if you selected either *Funding* or *Bi-Directional*
                                    as the Activity Type on the Cash Sweep Definition page. If you selected
                                    Bank Transfer as the Transfer Class, the system only displays a list of
                                    external bank account funding transfer templates.

Concentration Template   Select a concentration template if you selected either *Concentration* or *Bi-
                                    Directional* as the Activity Type on the Cash Sweep Definition page. If you
                                    selected *Bank Transfer* as the Transfer Class, the system only displays a list
                                    of external bank account transfer templates.

                                    Important! You must select the funding and concentration templates that
                                    are set up for the purpose of performing a cash sweep and are appropriate
                                    for the cash sweep structure that is being defined, otherwise the system may
                                    generate incorrect transfers.

Exclude   Select this check box to exclude the subaccount row for which it is selected
                                    from being included in the cash sweep process.

Cash Sweep Details – Amount Information

Select the Cash Sweep Details – Amount tab.

Minimum Transfer Amount   Enter the minimum amount to be transferred during a cash sweep process
                                    between the master bank account and a subaccount.

                                    A zero minimum amount indicates that there is no limit to the minimum
                                    transfer amount regardless of the activity type selected on the Cash Sweep
                                    Definition page.

                                    However if the calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer
                                    amount, these rules apply:

                                    •   When the activity type is *Funding* and the calculated transfer amount is
                                        less than the minimum transfer amount, the Cash Sweep process sets the
                                        calculated transfer amount to the minimum transfer amount.

                                    •   When the activity type is *Concentration* and the calculated transfer
                                        amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, the Cash Sweep
                                        process sets the calculated transfer amount to zero. There are not
                                        enough funds in the sub-account to meet the minimum transfer amount
                                        and still maintain its target balance, so no amount is set to transfer.

Maximum Transfer Amount   Enter the maximum amount to be transferred during a cash sweep process
                                    between the master bank account and the subaccount.

                                    A zero amount indicates that there is no maximum amount limit.

                                    The maximum transfer amount rule is when you select either Funding or
                                    Concentration as the activity type on the Cash Sweep Definition page.
                                    When you run the Cash Sweep process, if the calculated transfer amount is
                                    greater than the maximum transfer amount, then the calculated transfer
                                    amount is set to the maximum transfer amount for both activity types.

Sweep Currency   The default currency that appears in this field is derived from the Master
                                            Bank Account.

Cash Sweep Details – Account Information

Select the Cash Sweep Details – Account Information tab.

This grid defines the bank account details for each subaccount including the Bank ID, the Bank Account #
(bank account number) as well as the bank account's currency, associated business unit, and description.

Approving a Cash Sweep Structure

Access the Approve Cash Sweep Structure page. (Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Approve Cash Sweep
Structure, Approve Cash Sweep Structure)

Approve Cash Sweep Structure page

Search Criteria

Select values for the search criteria fields as needed. If you only select a setID and leave all other fields blank,
the system will list all of the Cash Sweep Structures that have a status of *Pending, Approved,* and *Denied*
when you click the Search button. You can also select an approval status of Pending, Approved, or Denied
and only cash sweep structures with the selected approval status appear on the list when you click the Search
button.

Cash Sweep Structure

A list of cash sweep structures appears in the Cash Sweep Structure group box based on you selected search
criteria. You can select all of the structures in the list or select individual structure check boxes and click the
Approve or Deny button to approve or deny the selected cash sweep structures.

Cash Sweep ID   Click the link of an individual cash sweep structure and access the actual
                                            cash sweep structure.

Approval Status	These values can appear in this field:

- *Pending*

    This value appears for a cash sweep structure that has never been approved or has been modified after approval or denial.

- *Approved*

    This value appears when an authorized approver clicks the Approved button on this page.

- *Denied*

    This value appears when an authorized approver clicks the Denied button on this page.

Approved By and **Date Approved**	Displays the User ID of the individual who approved or denied the cash sweep structure along with the date that the structure was approved or denied.

Processing Cash Sweep and Reviewing the Results

This section presents and overview of cash sweep processing and review and discusses how to:

- Run the Cash Sweep process.

- Review and update the results of a cash sweep.

Overview of the Cash Sweep Processing and Results

The Cash Sweep process (TR_CSH_SWEEP) drives the data extraction, funds transfer calculation and funds transfer execution for a cash sweep structure. This process performs these functions for each sub-account:

- Retrieves the cash position balance.

- Retrieves the target balance.

- Calculates the amount of funds in short or excess of the target balance.

- Determines from the cash sweep structure whether funding or concentrating funds apply.

- Applies rounding rules set in the cash sweep structure to the transfer amount.

- Compares the transfer amount to the minimum and maximum transfer limits in the cash sweep structure and adjusts as needed.

- Sets the final recommended transfer amount.

- If auto-generate check box is selected for a cash sweep structure, then it generates any bank transfers or EFT transfers.

- Populates the header and details on the Cash Sweep Results tables.

You can process cash sweep for each cash sweep structure and for a specific date. You can run the Cash Sweep process multiple times during a specified date. You can also select or not select sub-accounts for cash sweep processing.

Important! You can run Cash Sweep process for a cash sweep structure multiple times during the day. You should exercise caution and ensure that the system is set up to handle such a scenario. Make sure that the Cash Position Sources include the cash sweep amount and that a cash position has been recalculated after generating cash sweep transfers. If system is setup incorrectly it could result in inappropriate transfers.

See Also

Appendix C, "Cash Management Reports," Cash Management Reports: A to Z, page 315

Pages Used to Run the Cash Sweep Process and Review the Results

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Cash Sweep Request	CSH_SWEEP_REQ	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Request Cash Sweep, Cash Sweep Request	Run the Cash Sweep Calculations process.
Cash Sweep Results	CSH_SWEEP_RESULTS	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Cash Sweep Results, Cash Sweep Results	Review and update cash sweep results.

Running the Cash Sweep Process

Access the Cash Sweep Request page (Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Request Cash Sweep, Cash Sweep Request).

Cash Sweep Request page

Value Date Option   Select one of these options to set the date for the value date. The value date is the date that is used to retrieve the cash position amounts.

- *Current*

  Selecting this option assigns the current system date as the value date.

- *Specify*

  Select this option to display the Value Date field in which you can assign a specific date as the value date.

Note. If the auto generate check box is checked on the cash sweep structure, then the system retrieves the cash position amounts for each cash sweep structure based on each sequence and creates the EFT requests and bank transfers. If the auto generate check box is not checked, the system retrieves the cash position amounts for each cash sweep structure based on each sequence and stores the details in the Cash Sweep Structure tables.

Transaction Date Option   Select one of these options to set the transaction date for the transfer transactions.

- *Current*

  Select this option to apply the current system date to the transfer transactions.

- *Specify*

  Select this option to display the Transaction Date field in which you can assign a specific date to the transfer transactions.

Reviewing and Updating the Results of a Cash Sweep

Access the Cash Sweep Results page (Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Cash Sweep Results, Cash Sweep Results).

Cash Sweep Results

SetID:	SHARE	Sweep ID:	CS_C_LCL_SWEEP	Sweep Type:	Physical
Transaction Date:	11/12/2008	Sequence:	1		
Master Bank Code:	CHBK2	Bank ID:	00700		
Master Bank Account:	EURO	Bank Account #:	115201849174		
Activity Type:	Bi-Directional	Business Unit:	CHE01 Switzerland 1		
Value Date:	11/12/2008	Tree Name:	CASH_SWEEP_EUR		
Cash Position:	0.00				

Cash Sweep Details   Customize | Find | View All | | First 1-2 of 2 Last

Transaction Detail | Other Amounts | Account Information | Message Log

Select	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Sweep Currency	Recommended Transfer Amount	Actual Transfer Amount	Activity Type	Transfer Class	Template ID
☐	SHARE	CHBK2	CHCK	EUR	26,950.98	26,950.98	Concentratio ⌄	EFT Transfer	CS_CHF_2_EUR
☐	SHARE	CHBK2	EURC	EUR	40,499.15	40,499.15	Concentratio ⌄	Bank Transfer	CS_URC_2_URO

☑ Select All ☐ Clear All

[Generate Transfers]

Cash Sweep Results page – Transaction Detail tab

Cash Sweep Details   Customize | Find | View All | | First 1-2 of 2 Last

Transaction Detail | Other Amounts | Account Information | Message Log

Select	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Sweep Currency	Target Balance	Cash Position	Minimum Transfer Amount	Maximum Transfer Amount
☐	SHARE	CHBK2	CHCK	EUR	6,673.79	33,624.77	0.00	0.00
☐	SHARE	CHBK2	EURC	EUR	10,000.00	50,499.15	0.00	0.00

Cash Sweep Results page – Other Amounts tab

Cash Sweep Details   Customize | Find | View All | | First 1-2 of 2 Last

Transaction Detail | Other Amounts | Account Information | Message Log

Select	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Sweep Currency	Bank ID	Bank Account #	Account Currency
☐	SHARE	CHBK2	CHCK	EUR	00700	115201849173	CHF
☐	SHARE	CHBK2	EURC	EUR	00700	115201849175	EUR

Cash Sweep Results page – Account Information tab

Cash Sweep Details   Customize | Find | View All | | First 1-2 of 2 Last

Transaction Detail | Other Amounts | Account Information | Message Log

Select	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Sweep Currency	Message Text
☐	SHARE	CHBK2	CHCK	EUR	
☐	SHARE	CHBK2	EURC	EUR	

Cash Sweep Results page – Message Log tab

Select	This check box will only appear if the funds transfer still need to be generated, which means that the Auto Generate Transfers check box was not selected on the Cash Sweep Structure page of the associated cash sweep structure.
Generate Transfers	Click this button to generate either a bank transfer or an EFT request for the selected rows. Generating a bank transfer will update the Transfer ID field on the Transaction Detail tab with the Bank Transfer ID, and generating an EFT request will update the Transfer ID field with the EFT Request ID.

Transaction Detail Tab

Recommended Transfer Amount	After comparing the minimum and maximum transfer limits, the Cash Sweep Calculations process adjust the transfer amount as necessary, sets this final recommended transfer amount and updates this field.
Actual Transfer Amount	The default value is the amount that appears in the Recommended Transfer Amount field. You can override the this default amount and perform the transfer.
Activity Type	Displays either Funding or Concentration at the grid level for a bidirectional cash sweep structure.
	Note. A bidirectional cash sweep structure enables you to override the activity type on the subaccount grid. This provides you with the flexibility to change the direction in the movement of funds and override the actual transfer amount.

Other Amounts Tab

Target Balance	The Cash Sweep Calculations process retrieves the target balance and updates this field.
Cash Position	The Cash Sweep Calculations process retrieves the cash position for each subaccount and updates this field.

Account Information tab

This tab displays the sub bank account information that was entered on the Cash Sweep Structure – Accounts page.

Message Log tab

⚠	A warning or error icon appears before the Select column on each tab, which indicates there is a message on the Message Log tab.

Message Text   If the system issues a warning or error message and displays an icon, the text describing the warning or error appears in this field.

Generating Cash Sweep Reports

This section presents an overview of the cash sweep reports and describes the page navigation and usage of each report:

You can generate these cash sweep reports:

*   The Cash Sweep Structure report (TRX5000).

    This report lists detailed information for a cash sweep structure, includes the master bank account, overall cash sweep processing attributes, sub-accounts, sub-account processing attributes and audit information

    You must select a SetID and an As of Date for report. You have the option of selecting a specific Sweep ID or leaving the field blank, which will include all cash sweep structures that were created with the specified setID and as of the specified date.

*   Cash Sweep Bank Accounts (TRX5001)

    This report lists all of the cash sweep structures associated with a given bank account and whether the account is the master bank account or subaccount in the structure.

    You must select a SetID and an As of Date for this report. You have the option of selecting a Bank Code, the Business Unit associated with the bank, and a Bank Account number, or you can leave one or all of these values blank and the system will list all cash sweep structures created with the specified setID and as of the specified date and any bank values associated with a master bank account or subaccount in the structures.

*   Cash Sweep Summary (TRX5002)

    This report summarizes cash sweep amounts within a cash sweep structure by bank account.

    You must select a setID and select From Date and To Date values for this report. You can enter the same date in both fields to run the report as of that date only. You have the option of selecting a specific Sweep ID or leaving the field blank which will display a list of cash sweep amounts for all cash sweep structures that were created with the specified setID within or on the specified dates.

*   Denied Cash Sweep Payments (TRX5003)

    This report lists all denied cash sweep payments.

    You must select SetID, From Date, and To Date values for this report. You can enter the same date in both fields to run the report as of that date only. You have the option of selecting a specific Sweep ID or leaving the field blank which will display a list of all cash sweep payments that were denied that fall under the specified setID within or on the specified dates.

Pages Used to Generate Cash Sweep Reports

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Cash Sweep Structure	RUN_TRX5000	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Structure	Run the Cash Sweep Structure report.
Cash Sweep Bank Accounts	RUN_TRX5001	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Bank Accounts	Run the Cash Sweep Bank Accounts report.
Cash Sweep Summary	RUN_TRX5002	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Summary	Run the Cash Sweep Summary report.
Denied Cash Sweep Payments	RUN_TRX5003	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Denied Cash Sweep Payments	Run the Denied Cash Sweep Payments report.

Chapter 9

Transferring Funds

This chapter provides an overview of the funds transfer process and discusses how to:

- Create and approve funds transfer templates.

- Manage funds transfer template approval.

- Begin funds transfer requests.

- Create electronic fund transfer (EFT) requests.

- Create fee entries for EFT requests.

- Create bank account transfers.

- Create deals transfers.

- Review repetitive transfers.

Understanding the Funds Transfer Process

Cash Management defines and supports these two funds transfer methods:

- Bank account transfers

  Bank account transfers are used by your organization to transfer money between banks that are on your organization's general ledger (from one of your organization's bank accounts to another bank account belonging to your organization). This could be a transfer between your internal bank accounts, between your external bank accounts, or between your internal and your external bank accounts. PeopleSoft defines the following two categories of bank account transfers:

  - External bank transfers are used by your organization to transfer money between banks that are on your organization's general ledger (from one of your organization's bank accounts to another bank account belonging to your organization).

  - Internal bank transfers are transfers between business units using internal banks and internal bank accounts that you have created for your organization.

- EFTs

  EFTs are used to transfer funds from your organization's bank to an external third party.

For bank account transfers and EFTs, you can send funds transfers from templates, as well as on an ad hoc basis. To minimize the amount of manual entry when sending these ad hoc funds transfers, you can complete recipient information from settlement instructions, such as when you are paying a vendor who provides occasional services.

Cash Management also includes repetitive transfer, drawdown transfer, and prenotification functionality. Repetitive transfers and drawdown transfers are preapproved agreements to transfer monetary amounts on a periodic basis. (The Federal Reserve Banks operate the Fedwire Funds Service, which supports four types of transfers: repetitive, semi-repetitive, non-repetitive or freeform, and drawdown. PeopleSoft funds transfer functionality supports all four transfer types.) There is not a funds transfer method as described above for bank account transfers and EFTs. The relationship of the involved parties determines whether a repetitive or drawdown transfer is in the form of a bank account transfer or EFT. A prenotification is a file sent to a debtor's bank to test if payments may be made to a creditor through a specified bank account. The creditor will not process a payment made through the debtor's bank account until a prenotification is sent and successfully processed.

Cash Management supports the following transfer types:

• A repetitive transfer is used when a company frequently makes a transfer between the same debit and credit parties.

  The parties involved may be your organization and your bank—or your organization, your bank, and a third party. The Originating Depository Financial Institution (ODFI) has a record of the debit and credit parties and receives electronic and telephonic instructions to make the transfer. The ODFI also assigns a unique identifier to each instruction template. The items communicated to the ODFI as part of the transfer consist of the unique identifier, the date of the transfer, and the dollar amount. Of these three items, only the date and dollar amount may be changed, which decreases the risk of misdirected funds.

• A semi-repetitive transfers is similar to a repetitive transfer.

  The difference is that you can also modify the transfer description, in addition to the amount and date information.

• A non-repetitive or freeform transfer is used for ad-hoc transfers; you can edit all fields.

• A drawdown is a request sent by a company to an ODFI to initiate a wire transfer from its own account or another party's account at a Receiving Depository Financial Institution (RDFI).

  For drawdown transfers, the RDFI is the payor of funds. The RDFI requires that it have authorization for payment from the account holder—meaning the party being debited must preauthorize the transfer.

  Drawdown transfers are most frequently used as part of a company's cash concentration system. Organizations use cash concentration systems to consolidate many bank accounts (operated by individual areas in the organization) to a cash position in a single account.

  Drawdown transfers are also a subset of repetitive transfers. You can set up a drawdown transfer to be a repetitive transfer.

- A prenotification or "prenote" is an EFT Request used to verify that payments can be made to a creditor from the debtor's bank account. Prenotes are created using a transfer template. From the template you can create a prenote which is basically an EFT for a zero dollar amount. After settling the EFT, the prenote will then be processed via Financial Gateway like any other EFT. Prenotes can only be settled through Financial Gateway.

  In the case of ACH prenotes, if no return is sent back after a specified number of days, then the debtor can assume that it can send payments to the creditor's bank account. A back-end process updates the prenotes' status after the specified number of days has passed.

  If an ACH Return file is received from the creditor's bank, it will contain information that the prenote had errors that must be corrected before the creditor will accept payments from the debtor. The creditor must send a new, corrected prenote. If no return file is received after the defined number of days, then it can be assumed that the debtor's payments will be processed by the creditor's bank.

You can set up preapproved repetitive transfers and drawdown transfers in the Cash Management funds transfer pages, creating a template that stores the repetitive transfer agreement information. This information includes the unique identifier assigned by the bank that authorizes (or administrates) the transfer.

Note. As repetitive transfers and drawdown transfers are preapproved and preconfigured agreements, they cannot be initiated on an ad hoc basis.

Funds Transfer Business Process

To process funds transfers, you create the transfer (either ad hoc or using a template), select it for settlement, and if required, route it for settlement approval. After it is approved, the system forwards the transfer to either the Financial Gateway or obtained via Pay Cycle Manager depending on what you select on the Settle Through field on the External Accounts - Payment Methods page. Use the dispatch settlements functionality to transmit the transfer to the appropriate bank and bank account.

For repetitive and drawdown transfers, only the repetitive transfer code (for drawdown transfers, this is the third-party authorization code), amount, and date are transmitted to the ODFI.

Here is a general overview of the steps in the funds transfer process:

1. Create all of the templates required by your organization.

   Here are some possible combinations:

   - Bank account transfer.

   - Bank account transfer as a repetitive transfer.

   - Bank account transfer as a drawdown transfer.

   - Bank account transfer as a repetitive drawdown transfer.

   - EFT.

   - EFT as a repetitive transfer.

   - EFT as a drawdown transfer.

   - EFT as a repetitive drawdown transfer.

   - EFT as a prenotification.

2. Approve new and modified templates.

3. Create a bank account transfer or EFT request.

4. On the bank account transfer or EFT request, select the appropriate template to create the specific transfer needed and provide any necessary transfer information to complete the transfer instructions.

   You are not required to select a template if the transfer is considered a freeform transfer.

5. Select and approve transfers for settlement using the Settlement Manager.

6. Dispatch settlements to the appropriate banking institution for payment using Financial Gateway.

   Note. If the settlement is to be settled through Pay Cycle Manager, it will be picked up at a later time.

The system processes the approved funds transfers and generates the appropriate accounting entries. Accounting entries for EFT transfers may be generated only if an accounting template has been specified on the EFT transfer request. Accounting events for bank transfers are automatic and do not need an accounting template.

If Financial Gateway is used as the settle-through option, you can, with the proper setup, get periodic updates to the original transaction until the settlement is paid. For wire transfers, the system can be configured to update the transaction with the Fed Wire ID generated by the bank for reference during inquiries.

Prenotification Process

To create a prenote:

1. Create a new EFT template on the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page using a payment method and a payment layout that will support prenotes and select the Prenote check box.

   See *PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Electronic Banking Using Financial Gateway," Understanding the Layout Catalog.

2. Access the Prenotification Details page. (Optional)

   The prenote status is assigned a status of "New." You can set the number of calendar days that must transpire after the prenote is sent to Financial Gateway before the prenote status changes to Confirmed by the system if no ACH Return file is received.

3. Approve the template on the Approve Transfer Templates page.

   Upon approval, the system will prompt you to create a zero-dollar EFT Request, which serves as the transaction representing the prenote.

4. Click Yes.

   The EFT Request page is displayed with the Prenotification field selected. All of the information from the template is transferred to this EFT Request transaction with a zero-dollar amount.

5. Select the prenote for approval from the Select Settlements page.

6. Approve the prenote EFT Request from the Approve Settlements page.

7. Dispatch the prenote in Financial Gateway just as you would any other payment.

    This changes the status from "New" to "Pending." If no return is sent back from the bank within the number of business calendar days specified on the Prenotification Details page, the prenote status changes to "Confirmed." The status change is performed by a batch process that checks the number of days that have transpired since the creation of the prenote and compares it with the number of days specified on the Prenotification Details page (see Step 2).

    If a return acknowledgment file is sent back from Financial Gateway, the prenote status changes to "Rejected" and the template will not be approved for use. If the errors in the prenote are correctable, a second prenote may be sent using this template. The status can be reset from "Error" to "New."

See Also

Chapter 10, "Working with Settlements," page 185

Prerequisites

To process funds transfers:

*   Configure banks.

*   Configure bank branches.

*   Configure bank accounts and account payment methods.

At this time, you can optionally:

*   Define settlement instructions.

*   Define bank account transfer templates.

*   Define EFT request template instructions and field level security for templates.

*   Define settlement approval options.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining Account Settlement Information

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up Counterparties," Defining Settlement Instructions for Counterparty Deals

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up the Bank Statement Import Process"

159

Common Elements Used in This Chapter

Payment Method	Indicate the method used to get the funds from the funding account. For example, select *ACH* if the funds are to be processed through an Automated Clearing House (ACH).
Repetitive Transfer Code	A code for any repetitive funds transfer type, assigned by a bank (or financial institution) to automatically initialize the bank's transfer process.
Drawdown Transfer	If selected, it indicates the transfer is a repetitive drawdown transfer.

Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates

To define transfer templates, use the Enter Transfer Templates component (TR_WIRE_TEMPLATES).

This section discusses how to:

1. Enter template origin information.

2. Specify template destination information.

3. Configure template EFT handling options.

4. Define template intermediary bank routings.

5. Enter template transfer addenda.

6. Add template internal notes.

7. Record template beneficiary address information.

8. Define template field security.

Understanding the Funds Transfer Template Component

Your organization may benefit from setting up transactions in advance with parties with which you conduct regular, specific transactions. For example, using template transactions can streamline the process of distributing quarterly payouts to clients or monthly or annual payments to vendors.

You set up the template, specifying whether it is for bank account transfers or EFTs. You can then further specify if the template is a repetitive transfer or drawdown transfer. Page values established at the template level for repetitive and drawdown transfers cannot be changed by a user at the transfer request level. In addition, you can specify security at the field level for the template.

Note. Pages and fields in the funds transfer template become available or unavailable for entry, depending on the selected transfer class.

To create a funds transfer template:

1. Select the Add a New Value tab on the Funds Transfer Templates search page.

2. Enter a SetID and Transfer Template ID, and specify a Transfer Class of *Bank Transfer* or *EFT Transfer.*

3. Complete the Origin, Destination, Beneficiary Address, and Template Field Security pages of the funds transfer template pages.

Pages Used to Create and Approve Funds Transfer Templates

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Enter Transfer Templates - Origin	TR_WR_TEMPLATE_FR	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Origin	Enter template origin information. Set up the template for withdrawing funds from an account to transfer those funds.
Prenotification Details	TR_WR_PRENOTE	Click the Prenotification Details link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page.	Enter parameters for creating a template for prenotification requests.
Enter Transfer Templates - Destination	WR_TEMPLATE_FR	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Destination	Specify template destination information. Set up templates to send wire transfers repeatedly to particular parties.
EFT Options	TR_EFT_OPT_SEC	Click the EFT Options link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.	Configure template EFT handling options. **Note.** Values specified at the template level cannot be overwritten at the request level. See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining Beneficiary Bank EFT Options.
Routings	TR_INTR_TBL_SEC	Click the Routings link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.	Define template intermediary bank routings. Set up multiple routing information for a funds transfer.
Enter Transfer Templates - Detailed Description	TR_WR_DESC_SEC	Click the View Description button on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.	Enter any of your in-house notes for the funds transfer. This information is not transmitted to the recipient.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	Click the Addenda link on the Enter Transfer Template - Destination page.	Enter addenda information. This information is transmitted to the recipient.
Enter Transfer Templates - Beneficiary Address	WR_TEMPLATE_ADR	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Beneficiary Address	Set up address information for the recipient of the funds transfer.
Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security	WR_TMPLT_FLDLST	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Template Field Security	Select the active fields in your template, choose whether to enable accounting or to allow settlement instructions.

Entering Template Origin Information

Access the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page (Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Origin).

Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page

All available fields on this page are required. They contain relevant information about the account from which you are transferring funds. Available fields depend on the selected transfer class.

Status	Select *Active* or *Inactive.*If you mark a template *Inactive,* it is not available for use (it does not appear in the funds transfer pages).
Template Expiration	Enter a date that the repetitive transfer template expires.
	If you select an expired template for use—meaning, if the template status is set to *Active* and the system date is past the date entered in this field—the system displays a warning message that you have selected an outdated template.
Pool Business Unit and **Pool ID**	If this bank account is used for holding investment pool funds, enter the business unit and identifier of the pool.
Payment Method	Available payment methods are determined by the values that you define in the Bank Code and Bank Account fields.
Prenote	Select to create a prenotification.
Prenotification Details	Click to access the Prenotification Details page to set prenote status and confirmation parameters if the template being created is for a prenote.
Repetitive Transfer Code	Enter the repetitive transfer code that the bank assigned to this transfer. This field is required because the code is necessary to initiate the transfer process with the bank.
Repetitive Transfer	Select if this template is for a repetitive transfer.
Drawdown Transfer	Select if this template is for a drawdown transfer.
Accounting Template	For transfers of an *EFT Transfer* transfer class, specify the accounting template from which to generate accounting entries.
Approval Status	Displays *Pending* as the value when you first create a transfer. The status changes as activity occurs later in the workflow—for example, when a supervisor approves the entered funds.

Specifying Prenotification Details

Access the Prenotification Details page (click the Prenotification Details link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page).

Prenotification Status	Defaults to New for first-time prenotes. If an initial prenote was rejected using this template, the status be changed to "Rejected." You can change the prenote status from here, however, if you modify the template, the system will recreate the prenote and a new settlement will be processed.

Confirm Prenote After _ Days	Select the number of calendar days that must transpire after the prenote is sent to Financial Gateway before the prenote status changes to Confirmed by the system if no ACH Return file is received back from Financial Gateway. The default setting is seven (7) days.
View Prenote	Click to access the EFT Request — Origin page and view the details of the prenote created using this template.

See Chapter 9, "Transferring Funds," Understanding the Funds Transfer Process, page 155.

Specifying Template Destination Information

Access the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page (Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Destination).

Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page

For Bank Transfer templates, only the Bank Code and Bank Account fields are available for entry.

Complete all applicable and available fields for EFT Transfer classes.

Get Settlement Instructions	Click to select settlement instructions and automatically populate fields. All page fields are overwritten with the settlement instruction information, including fields on the Beneficiary Address, EFT Options, Routings, and Detailed Description pages. Also, if a field is blank in the settlement instruction, the corresponding field on this page is also blank.
Name 1 and **Name 2**	Enter the recipient's name and other significant identifying information, for example, a company name, a DBA (doing business as), or joint payees.
Country	Select the destination country code, which also determines the selection of available Bank ID Qual (bank ID qualifier) values. Then specify a qualifier that determines which edit algorithm the system uses to check the bank ID number sequence.

Bank ID	Enter the routing number of your recipient's financial institution.
Branch ID	Enter the recipient's branch number.
Acct Type (account type)	Select the destination account type:

- *Bond*

- *Bus Acct* (business account)

- *Check Acct*(checking account)

- *Dem Dep* (demand deposit)

- *Lf Ins-Net* (life insurance)

- *Mutual* (mutual fund)

- *Ret It-DDA* (returned item, demand deposit account)

- *Ret It-Sav* (returned item, savings account)

- *S&B Acct* (stocks and bonds account)

- *Stock*

- *Time Dep* (time deposit)

- *Trust Fund*

Account # (account number)	Enter the account number that you are funding with this transaction.
Check Digit	This field is conditional and depends on the country that you selected.
	Click the View Description icon to add internal notes about the funds transfer. These notes are not transmitted to the recipient.
IBAN Digit	Create an IBAN for this template to facilitate automated processing of cross-border transactions.

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Banks," Understanding IBAN.

Enter the check digit and click View IBAN. If the DFI qualifier for the specified country is IBAN enabled, and the system successfully validates the check digit, the IBAN for this account appears. This field and the View IBAN button appears only if the IBAN Enterable field is not selected on the IBAN Formats page.

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Banks," Defining IBAN Formats.

IBAN (international bank account number)	Enter the IBAN. This field appears only if the IBAN Enterable field is selected on the IBAN Formats page.
	See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Banks," Defining IBAN Formats.
DFI Qualifier (depository financial institution qualifier)	Select to identify the bank and enter the associated DFI ID (depository financial institution ID), if required. If you use intermediary routings, this bank represents the final bank into which funds are transferred.
	The DFI qualifier indicates what format—how many characters and numerics—are in the bank's DFI ID. Note that each type has a specific number of digits that you can enter. Values are:
	Transit Number: Exactly 9 numeric characters, plus check digit calculation.
	Swift ID: Once you select 02 for the DFI Qualifier, you can enter the BIC code in the DFI ID field, which can be 8 or 11 characters, where positions 5 and 6 must be a valid 2-character country code.
	CHIPS Participant ID (Clearing House Interbank Payments System participant ID): 3 or 4 numeric characters.
	CHIPS Universal ID (Clearing House Interbank Payments System universal ID): 6 numeric characters.
	Canadian Bank Branch/Institute: No validation.
	Mutually Defined: No validation.
EFT Options	Click the EFT Options link to access the EFT Options page. Define specifics for EFT transmissions when using these settlement instructions.
	See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Pages Used to Define Settlement Instructions.
Routings	Click the Routings link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page to access the Routings page.
	See Chapter 9, "Transferring Funds," Defining Template Intermediary Bank Routings, page 167.
Addenda	Click the Addenda link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page to access the Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda page.
	See Chapter 9, "Transferring Funds," Entering Template Transfer Addenda, page 167.
Remittance Advice Attributes	Click the Remittance Advice Attributes link to access the Remittance Advice Attributes page.
	See *PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Electronic Banking Using Financial Gateway," Using Remittance Advice in Financial Gateway.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," International Bank Account Number (IBAN) Functionality

Defining Template Intermediary Bank Routings

Access the Routings page (click the Routings link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page).

Values specified at the template level can not be overwritten at the request level.

Seq (sequence)	Enter a sequence number for the routing row. This sequence number determines in which order the system routes the message.
Routing	Select from *Bank* or *DFI.*

Entering Template Transfer Addenda

Access the Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda page (click the Addenda link on the Enter Transfer Template - Destination page).

Values specified at the template level cannot be overwritten at the request level.

For funds transfers, direct debits, and treasury wires, this page consists of four 35-character lines. For Automated Clearing House transactions, this page is a freeform, 80-character field.

Adding Template Internal Notes

Access the Enter Transfer Templates - Detailed Description page (click the View Description icon on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page).

Values specified at the template level can not be overwritten at the request level.

Information recorded in the Descr (description) field is not transmitted with the funds transfer.

Defining Template Field Security

Access the Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security page (Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Template Field Security).

Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security page

Template Security Options

Disable All Template Fields	If selected, deselects all check boxes in the Field Security Options grid.
Selectively Enable Fields	If selected, more than one field security option is selected.
Enable All Template Fields	If selected, all field security options are selected.
Enable Accounting	Select to activate accounting from a template.
Allow Settlement Instructions	Select to leverage the EFT request into settlement instruction data.

Managing Funds Transfer Template Approval

This section discusses how to approve funds transfer template changes.

Page Used to Manage Funds Transfer Template Approval

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Approve Transfer Templates	TR_WR_TMPLT_APPR	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Approve Transfer Templates	Approve or deny funds transfer template changes.

Approving Transfer Template Changes

Access the Approve Transfer Templates page (Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Approve Transfer Templates).

Approve Transfer Templates page

Once transfer templates are created, or if existing templates are modified, you must approve templates prior to using them. This is true for funds transfers as well as prenotes. You can search for a specific template with a particular approval status and select to approve or deny items with your specified values.

To approve or deny transfer templates:

1. Enter your search criteria and click Search.

2. Click the template link in the Template ID column to view template information prior to approval or denial.

3. Select templates for approval or denial and click either Approve or Deny.

Prenote Status   Displays the current status of the prenotification.

                                                     See Chapter 9, "Transferring Funds," Specifying Prenotification Details, page 163.

Beginning Transfer Funds Requests

This section discusses how to begin a transfer request.

You can create EFT, bank, and deals transfers from various locations in Cash Management. The Transfer Funds page acts as the first page of a multistep "wizard." Select options to create a particular funds transfer type, and the system then routes you to the correct pages to complete the transfer.

See Also

Page Used to Begin a Transfer Funds Request

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Transfer Funds	TR_TRANSFER_PAGE	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Transfer Funds	Select a funds transfer type. Begin the setup of an funds transfer request for an EFT, banks, or deals request.

Beginning a Transfer Funds Request

Access the Transfer Funds page (Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Transfer Funds).

Transfer Funds page

Available fields on this page change depending on the transfer type that you select.

EFT Transfer	Transfer money to a third party. Select Template to prepopulate the EFT Request Entry pages.
Bank Transfer	Move funds between accounts that you own. Select *External* or *Internal* in the Transfer Type field.
Deal Entry	Transfer funds using a deal (for example, an intercompany loan).

See Also

Chapter 9, "Transferring Funds," Creating Bank Account Transfers, page 178

Chapter 9, "Transferring Funds," Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates, page 160

Chapter 9, "Transferring Funds," Defining Template Field Security, page 167

Creating EFT Requests

This section discusses how to:

- Enter transfer origin information.

- Specify destination information.

- (Optional) Configure EFT handling options.

- (Optional) Define intermediary bank routings.

- (Optional) Enter transfer addenda.

- (Optional) Add internal notes.

- Record beneficiary address information.

You can use the pages in this section to create an EFT request, whether your request is for a regular EFT request, or an EFT request involving repetitive transfer or drawdown transfer information.

See Also

Chapter 9, "Transferring Funds," Creating Bank Account Transfers, page 178

Pages Used to Create an EFT Request

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
EFT Request - Origin	TR_WIRE_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Origin	Enter transfer origin information. Capture data on the account from which funds will be furnished for the transfer
EFT Request - Destination	TR_WIRE_TO_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Destination	Specify destination information by entering recipient information for a funds transfer.
EFT Options	TR_EFT_OPT_SEC	Click the EFT Options link on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Configure EFT Handling options.
Routings	TR_INTR_TBL_SEC	Click the Routings link on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Set up multiple routing information for a funds transfer.
EFT Request - Detailed Description	TR_WR_DESC_SEC	Click the View Description icon on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Enter any of your in-house notes for the funds transfer. This information is not transmitted to the recipient.
EFT Request - Addenda	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	Click the Addenda link on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Enter addenda information. The system transmits this information to the recipient. For funds transfers, direct debits, and treasury wires, this page consists of four 35-character lines. For ACH transactions, this page is a freeform, 80-character field.
EFT Request - Beneficiary Address	TR_WIRE_ADDRESS	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Beneficiary Address	Capture the address and telephone information for the recipient of your funds transfers.

Entering Transfer Origin Information

Access the EFT Request - Origin page (Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Origin).

EFT Request - Origin page

Template ID	Select the template, if you are executing the EFT requests from a template.
	Note. Expired templates are not available for selection.
Prenotification	This field is display-only and will appear selected for ACH prenotes.
	See Chapter 9, "Transferring Funds," Understanding the Funds Transfer Process, page 155.
Fed Wire ID (federal wire ID)	For EFT requests associated with federal fund transfers, the Federal Reserve agency assigns a Federal Wire ID code after receiving the request. Enter the code in this field for your reference. This field is automatically populated if the bank returns acknowledgements containing the Fed Wire ID.
	This field is used only as reference in Cash Management; it is not necessary for the accounting process.
	Note. The Federal Wire ID code is the only reference number that the Federal Reserve recognizes when handling issues or questions about the transfer.
Fees	Click to create fees for this EFT request.
	See Chapter 9, "Transferring Funds," Creating Fee Entries for EFT Requests, page 177.

Payment Method	Select an available payment method (methods are determined by the values that you defined in the Bank Code and Bank Accountfields).
	Values are *Automated Clearing House, Direct Debit, Electronic Funds Transfer,* or *Wire Transfer.*
	You cannot select a payment method for any type of repetitive transfer.
Business Date	Enter the business date on which the funds transfer is to occur. The date that you select carries over to the next business day, depending on:

- Holiday lists associated with the currency of the nation funding the transaction.

- Business day conventions established at your organization's Treasury Management implementation.

| **Acct Template** (accounting template) | Select an accounting template if accounting is to be run for the transfer. Leave this field blank if the transfer is already accounted for in another PeopleSoft application (for example, Payables). |
| | **Note.** The Acct Template field is unavailable when the selected account in the Account # field is not enabled for cash clearing. |

Transaction Information

| **EFT Request Status** | Displays a value of *Unapproved.* This value changes as activity occurs later in the workflow—for example, when a supervisor approves the entered funds. |
| **Pool Information** | Click to access the Pool Information page. If this bank account is used for holding investment pool funds, enter the business unit and identifier of the pool. |

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining External Account Information

Specifying Destination Information

Access the EFT Request - Destination page (Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Destination).

EFT Request - Destination page

Get Settlement Instructions	Click to select settlement instructions and automatically populate fields. All fields are overwritten with the settlement instruction information, including fields on the Beneficiary Address, EFT Options, Routings, and Detailed Description pages. Also, if a field is blank in the settlement instruction, the corresponding field on this page is also blank.
Name 1 and **Name 2**	Enter the recipient's name and other significant identifying information (for example, a company name, a DBA, or joint payees).
Country	Select the destination country code, which also determines the selection of available values in the Bank ID Qual (bank ID qualifier) values. Then specify a qualifier that determines which edit algorithm the system should use to check the bank ID number sequence.
Bank ID	Enter the routing number of your recipient's financial institution.
Branch ID	Enter the recipient's branch number.

Acct Type (account type)   Select the destination account type:

- *Bond*

- *Bus Acct* (business account)

- *Check Acct* (checking account)

- *Dem Dep* (demand deposit)

- *Lf Ins-Net* (life insurance)

- *Mutual* (mutual fund)

- *Ret It-DDA* (returned item, demand deposit account)

- *Ret It-Sav* (returned item, savings account)

- *S&B Acct* (stocks and bonds account)

- *Stock*

- *Time Dep* (time deposit)

- *Trust Fund*

Account # (account number)   Enter the account number that you are funding with this transaction.

Check Digit   This field is conditional and dependent on the selected country.

▦   Click the View Description button to add internal notes about the funds transfer. These notes are not transmitted to the recipient.

DFI Qualifier (depository financial institution qualifier)   Select to identify the bank and enter the associated DFI ID (depository financial institution ID), if required. If you use intermediary routings, this bank represents the final bank into which funds are transferred.

The DFI qualifier indicates what format—how many characters and numerics—are in the bank's DFI ID. Note that each type has a specific number of digits that you can enter. Values are:

Transit Number: Exactly 9 numeric characters, plus check digit calculation.

Swift ID: 8 or 11 characters; positions 5 and 6 must be a valid 2-character country code.

CHIPS Participant ID (Clearing House Interbank Payments System participant ID): 3 or 4 numeric characters.

CHIPS Universal ID (Clearing House Interbank Payments System universal ID): 6 numeric characters.

Canadian Bank Branch/Institute: No validation.

Mutually Defined: No validation.

IBAN (international bank account number)   Enter the IBAN. This field appears only if the IBAN Enterable field is selected on the IBAN Formats page.

IBAN Digit (international bank account number digit)	Define the account's IBAN for transmittal with other transfer information. Enter the check digit and click View IBAN. If the DFI qualifier for the specified country is IBAN enabled, and the system successfully validates check digit, the IBAN for this account appears. This field and the View IBAN button appears only if the IBAN Enterable field is not selected on the IBAN Formats page.
BIC (bank identifier code)	Enter the BIC code for the selected bank. This code is based on the ISO standard (9362), which is the universal method used to identify the financial institutions that enable automated processing of payments. A BIC code is used to route cross-border and some domestic payments to a bank branch or payments center.
	SEPA requires the use of BIC and IBAN codes to uniquely identify the creditor's and debtor's banks and bank accounts in all euro cross-border payments. It is imperative that the IBAN and BIC codes are correct to avoid repair fees that the bank charges due to processing errors, and to avoid delays in processing payments and collections due to the time-consuming correction of these errors.
	Once you enter a BIC code, the system validates the length and layout of the characters, and validates the BIC country code against the country code set up for the bank branch .

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up Banks," Understanding IBAN

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up Banks," Defining IBAN Formats

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," International Bank Account Number (IBAN) Functionality

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining External Accounts Information

Creating Fee Entries for EFT Requests

This section discusses how to:

• Define fee codes for EFT requests.

• Create fee entries using EFT request fee codes.

Pages Used to Create Fee Entries for EFT Requests

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Fee Codes	FA_FEE_CD_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes, Fee Codes	Define fee codes for EFT requests. See Chapter 5, "Managing Fees and Account Analysis," Defining Fee Codes, page 34.
Enter Fees	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Fees, Enter Fees	Create fee entries for EFT requests using previously defined fee codes. See Chapter 5, "Managing Fees and Account Analysis," Creating Fee Entries, page 51.

Creating Bank Account Transfers

This section provides an overview of bank account transfers and discusses how to:

1. Process bank account transfers.

2. (Optional) View associated bank transfer ChartFields.

3. (Optional) View accounting events.

4. Process bank transfers using electronic settlements.

Understanding Bank Account Transfers

Transferring funds between bank accounts is a common requirement for cash managers. Typical tasks that require fund transfers are:

• Adjusting daily cash balances.

• Making a trade payment or receipt on behalf of a business unit.

• Funding the internal accounts of other business units.

Note. Only corporate treasury-designated banks can initiate fund transfers. However, this rule does not apply when the transfer is between two bank accounts that belong to the same business unit.

The system schedules accounting events and updates bank balances. Bank transfer transactions are also available to the settlements module for all settlement-related processes and eventual payment. You can create templates for transfers that occur frequently; you can then recall the template and enter the amount and the date.

These transfer types are supported by the system:

• Internal bank transfers: from one internal account to another internal account.

• External bank transfers: from one external account to another external account.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining Internal Account Information

Prerequisites

You must set up internal bank accounts for internal transfers. for external transfers, external accounts must be created.

To set up internal bank accounts:

1. Define a bank with the Type set to *Internal* on the Bank Information page.

2. Create an internal bank account between two internal bank types.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining Internal Account Information

Pages Used to Create Bank Account Transfers

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Transfer Funds	TR_TRANSFER_PAGE	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Transfer Funds	Begin the setup of a bank transfer.
Bank Account Transfer	BAX_TRANSFER_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Bank Account Transfer	Initiate bank transfers for internal or external bank transfers.
Bank Transfer ChartFields	BAX_CF_ENTRY	Click ChartFields on the Bank Account Transfer page.	View associated bank transfer ChartFields.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Accounting Events	TRA_EVENT_CAL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Events	View summary accounting event information generated from deals, facility fees, and bank transfers. Enter *Bank Transfers* in the Source Code field to view the scheduled accounting event. See Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Reviewing Accounting Information, page 248.

Processing Bank Account Transfers

Access the Bank Account Transfer page (Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Bank Account Transfer).

Bank Account Transfer page

To create internal bank account transfers:

1. Select the Add a New Value tab on the Bank Account Transfer search page.

2. Enter values in the Business Unit and Transfer ID fields, and specify a value of *Internal Transfer* in the Transfer Type field.

3. Click Add.

4. Enter a description.

5. Create internal bank account transfers from a template or on an ad hoc basis:

   • Click Use Template to select a defined template on which to base a transfer. This displays a list of templates from which you can select according to the business unit transfer ID and description. The system populates all of the fields except Trans Date (transaction date) and Amount. To create the transfer, complete those fields.

   Note. Expired templates are not available for selection.

   • Create an ad hoc internal bank account transfer by completing fields only in the Transfer From Account and Transfer To Account regions.

     If you anticipate that the ad hoc transfer will recur frequently, select the Can be used as Template check box to save it as a template.

   • Click the Instructions button to review the settlement instructions. The settlement instructions define how the payment or transfer is made—the system uses the deposit instructions from the bank account that is receiving funds (the Transfer To Account bank).

6. Save the transfer.

If you are creating external bank account transfers, you can specify a transfer template that may also include drawdown wire or repetitive wire information.

To create external bank account transfers:

1. Select the Add a New Value tab on the Bank Account Transfer search page.

2. Enter values in the Business Unitand Transfer ID fields, and specify a value of *External Transfer* in the Transfer Type field.

3. Click Add.

4. Enter a description.

5. Create external bank account transfers from a template or on an ad hoc basis:

   • Select a transfer template ID to automatically populate the external bank account transfer with information. If you create an external bank account transfer from a template, you can also click the Chartfields link to edit the bank transfer ChartFields.

   • Leave the Transfer Template ID field blank to create an ad hoc bank account transfer. Complete the remaining fields on the page. If you create an ad hoc external bank account transfer, you cannot modify the bank transfer ChartFields.

   • Click the Instructions button to review the settlement instructions. The settlement instructions define how the payment or transfer is made—the system uses the deposit instructions from the bank account that is receiving funds (the Transfer To Account bank).

6. Save the transfer.

Transfer From Account

Describe the bank account that is serving as the fund source.

- For an external bank, select the bank and the bank account.

- For an internal bank, select the bank, and then specify the account customer and associated bank account. (The customer represents the business unit that is serving as the fund source.) Enter the monetary amount to transfer.

Transfer to Account

Indicate the bank account or internal account that is receiving the funds. Select a bank that is an appropriate match for the transfer from account only.

- If the transfer from account bank is an external bank, then the transfer to account bank must also be external. For an external bank, select the bank and bank account.

- For an internal bank, select the bank and then specify the customer and the associated bank account. (The customer represents the business unit that is receiving funds.)

For example, suppose that you want to move business unit UBUO3's balance from its account with TBU02 to TBU01's account with TBU02. This table lists the set up:

Group box	Bank	Customer
Transfer From Account	*TBU02*	*OBU03*
Transfer To Account	*TBU02*	*TBU01*

Note. External transfers must first be selected and approved before being processed through the Financial Gateway or Pay Cycle Manager.

For internal transfers, some restrictions are enforced:

- The customer specified as the Transfer From Account cannot be the same as the bank specified as the Transfer To Account for the same transaction.

- Similarly, the bank specified as the Transfer From Account cannot be the same as the customer specified as the Transfer To Account for the same transaction.

After you save the transfer, the system updates cash flows and generates an accounting event to create journal entries for this transaction.

Note. When internal accounts are established between two business units, you can specify a default internal account. If more than one account exists between two business units with the same currency, the default account is the one that is processed in bank transfer.

See Also

Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Reviewing Accounting Information, page 248

PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up Electronic Banking Using Financial Gateway," Understanding Electronic Banking

Viewing Accounting Events

Access the Accounting Events page (Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Events).

Accounting Events page

Enter *Bank Transfers* in the Source Code field to view the scheduled accounting event.

See Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Reviewing Accounting Information, page 248.

Reviewing Repetitive Transfers

This section discusses how to review repetitive transfers.

Page Used to Review Repetitive Transfers

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Review Repetitive Templates	TR_REPTVE_TRNF_PG	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Review Repetitive Templates, Review Repetitive Templates	Search for and maintain your organization's repetitive transfer templates.

Reviewing Repetitive Transfers

Access the Review Repetitive Templates page (Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Review Repetitive Templates, Review Repetitive Templates).

Review Repetitive Templates page

To maintain your repetitive transfers:

1. Enter your search criteria, and click the Search button.

2. From the returned results, click a Template ID to access the specific transfer template's information.

3. If you edit any information on the transfer template:

    • Click OK to save your changes and return to the Review Repetitive Templates page.

    • Click Cancel to discard your changes without saving, and return to the Review Repetitive Templates page.

    • Click Apply to save your changes without returning to the Review Repetitive Templates page.

Chapter 10

Working with Settlements

This chapter provides an overview of the settlements payment process, lists prerequisites and common elements, and discusses how to:

- Select settlements for outbound submission.

- Review Settlements for Financial Sanctions.

- Manually approve settlements.

- Dispatch settlements.

- Review payment files.

- Use the Settlement Manager.

- Specify deal settlement netting.

Understanding the Settlements Payment Process

This section discusses the process for handling settlements within Treasury.

Settlements are cash flow transactions that the system transforms into payment instructions for different financial institutions. In Cash Management you can generate settlements from bank account transfers, electronic funds transfer (EFT) requests, and fee entries. You can also generate a settlement by entering a deal in Deal Management. The settlement process involves three steps: selection, approval (an optional step), and dispatch. You first select settlements that are to be processed as payments by using the Select Settlements page. Depending on system settings, certain selected settlements must be approved prior to being processed. You can establish one of three following settlement approval methods:

- No approval required.

- Manual settlement approval, performed by an authorized user (or users) by using the Settlement Approval page.

- Automatic settlement approval, performed by PeopleSoft Workflow.

If the financial sanctions service is enabled and the bank that is being used to pay requires validation, the system automatically performs a search for the matches between the names and addresses entered on the settlement with those on the financial sanctions list. This functionality is enabled on the Financial Sanctions Options page by selecting the Enable in Treasury Settlements check box.

See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Installation Options for PeopleSoft Applications," Setting Financial Sanctions Options.

Next, the Financial Sanction Validation check box must be selected on the Bank Information page. Settlements transacted through these banks will initiate the financial sanctions comparison upon there selection.

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Banks," Defining Bank Information.

Once the settlements are approved, they are either sent to Financial Gateway where they are dispatched to a financial institution using the Dispatch Payments page or obtained by the Pay Cycle Manager for processing. The system processes payments according to the pay method that is defined on the External Accounts - Payment Methods page. Depending on the payment method type, you can specify that the payment be settled through one of two methods: PeopleSoft Financial Gateway or the Payables Pay Cycle Manager. Within Financial Gateway, the dispatch process transforms these settlements into payment files, and submits them to the appropriate institution.

• For payments that are set to be processed through Financial Gateway, you use the pages and functionality that is discussed in the Financial Gateway PeopleBook.

    See *PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with Payments in Financial Gateway."

• For payments that are set to be processed through Payables Pay Cycle Manager, you should refer to the Payables chapter Processing Pay Cycles to process these types of payments.

    Note. If deal approval is required, then related deal transactions do not appear for selection on the Select Settlements page until the deal is approved.

    See *PeopleSoft Payables 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Processing Pay Cycles."

See Also

PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook, "Working with Payments in Financial Gateway"

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up and Using the Financial Sanctions Service"

Settlement Workflow

Settlement selection and settlement approval functionality are integrated with PeopleSoft Workflow. When you select or approve settlements, the system routes workflow notifications to defined user's worklists, alerting them that the settlements are being processed.

If you implement multiple levels of approval, the system automatically routes the approval through the levels until the appropriate user authorizes it.

For example, you establish the following two levels of approval:

• Administrator, with a 50,000 USD limit.

• Manager, with a 100,000 USD limit.

If the administrator approves a settlement of 75,000 USD, the system does not set the settlement status to approved as the amount is over the defined approval limit. Instead, the system routes the settlement to the manager's worklist for approval. The manager can then select settlement approval work items on the worklist to access the Settlement Approval page, and approve the settlement.

See Also

Settlement Approval

You use one of two approval methods: manual settlement approval, or automatic settlement approval using a PeopleTools Workflow process called Virtual Approver. Once authorized, whether manually or automatically by the Virtual Approver, you process the settlements for payment.

See *PeopleTools PeopleBook: Workflow Technology, "Defining Approval Processes," Understanding Virtual Approver*

This diagram illustrates the settlement process:
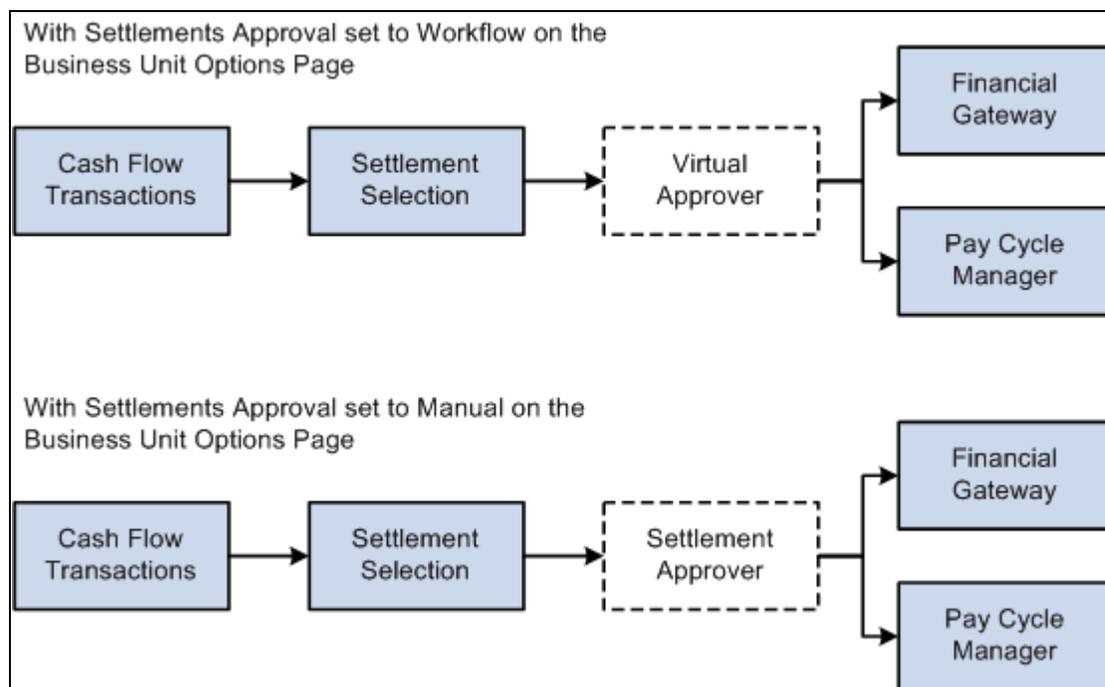
Understanding the settlement process

Note. If you're enabling Virtual Approver, you must select *Workflow* as the approval method on the Treasury Options page. Also, you can only authorize settlements up to the maximum approval limit with Virtual Approver.

Common Elements in This Chapter

Account	Displays the account from which payment originates.
Bank	Displays the bank from which payment originates.
Cpty (counterparty)	Displays the counterparty receiving the payment.
Cutoff Time	Enter the time by which the payment must be received.
Cutoff Date	Enter the date by which the payment must be received.
Filter by Source	Select *Bank Fees, Bank Transfers,Deal Fees,Deals,Facility Fees,Hedges, Interest Calculated,Letter of Credit Fees,Treasury Wires,* or *Wire Fees* to limit the search results.
Preferences	Click to establish the default search criteria for settlement selection or settlement approval.
Stlmt Inst (settlement instructions)	Enter payment instructions for the settlement, including recipient address and bank information.
Sort By	You can also sort the results by *Account, Amount,Bank, Method,* or *Source ID,* using this field.
Src BU (source business unit)	Displays the Treasury Management source business unit.
Source Code	Displays the original Treasury Management source for the transaction. Source codes are represented by a single letter in the transaction results.
	Bank Fees: *B.*
	Bank Xfers (bank transfers): *X.*
	Deals: *F.*
	Deal Estimated Maturity Accrual: *M.*
	Deal Fees: *E.*
	EFT Fees: *R.g*
	EFT's: *W.*
	Fac Fees (facility fees): *F.*
	Hedges: *H.*
	Interest Calculated: *I.*
	LC Fees (letter of credit fees): *T.*
Source ID	Displays the source identifier code for the specific transaction.

Status	Indicates the payment status: *Selected* for payment, *Unselected* for payment, or *Pending* approval. When you select a payment on this page, its status changes to *Pending*.
Total Payment Amount	Displays the sum of all payment results, and currency code.
Value Date	Enter the effective date of the settlement.
↻ **View Payment Life Cycle**	Click to access payment details and events in the settlement's life cycle. See Chapter 10, "Working with Settlements," Using Payment Life Cycle Functionality, page 192.

Selecting Settlements for Outbound Submission

This section discusses how to:

• Select settlements for outbound submission.

• Use payment life-cycle functionality.

Pages Used to Select Settlements

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Navigation*	*Usage*
Select Settlements	STL_SELECTION	Cash Management, Settlements, Select Settlements	Review and select payments that are scheduled for outbound submission.
Settlements User Preferences	STL_SELECTION_PREF	Click Preferences on the Review Settlements page.	Set up the default criteria for searching settlements.
Sanction Review	STL_VIOLATIONS	Select payments on the Select Settlements page that fail the financial sanctions validation.	Lists selected settlements where the names or addresses match those found on the list of Specially Designation Nationals (SDN) published by the US Department of the Treasury's Office of Foreign Asset Control (OFAC), the European Union, or an enterprise-defined list.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Treasury Payment Life-Cycle	PMT_LIFE_CYCLE_PG	Click View Payments Life Cycle on the Select Settlements page. ↻	View detailed and summary information for a payment, from the initial creation through payment and reconciliation.
Review Settlements	STL_SELECTION	Cash Management, Settlements, Review Settlements	View the payments that are scheduled for authorization and release.

Selecting Settlements for Outbound Submission

Access the Select Settlements page (Cash Management, Settlements, Select Settlements).

Select Settlements page

Settlement Search Criteria

Enter the search criteria for payments and click Search to display a list of payments.

Status   Select a status value of *Denied, Selected,* or *Unselected.* The selected value determines what settlement action buttons are available to you.

Payments - (All)

Source ID	Click to view a settlement's details.
Stlmt Inst (settlement instructions)	Click to view the specified settlement instructions.
Cutoff Time and **Cutoff Date**	Payments arriving by this time and date are processed by the bank that day. Payments arriving afterwards are processed on the next business day.
Method	Displays the payment method for the settlement, as defined in the settlement instructions.
Select Payments	Select a payment and click to process. After you select a payment, the system changes the Status field to *Pending* (pending approval).

<table>
<tr><td></td><td>If the payment is designated for financial sanctions validation, the system will compare the names and addresses of the financial sanctions list with those entered on the To Account for EFT Requests and the settlement instructions for all other settlements. If potential matches are found, the Sanction Review page appears displaying the payments that require a closer review.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>If you enable settlement authorization workflow, the system submits payments to the appropriate worklists for approval. If you enable auto approval, the system marks the payments as approved and ready for dispatch.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>If you enable manual settlement approval, you must manually approve the payments on the Settlement Approval page.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>If you do not enable automatic settlement approval, the system automatically marks the payments as approved and ready for dispatch.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Note. Settlements associated with a deal that requires deal approval, will not be available for approval until the deal itself is first approved.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Deny Payments</td><td>Click to deny settlements for payment. After you deny a payment, the system changes the Status field to Denied.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>Note. You cannot deny a payment once the automated accounting process is run for the settlement.</td></tr>
<tr><td></td><td>See <u>Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Processing Accounting Entries, page 233.</u></td></tr>
<tr><td>Edit Bank Account</td><td>Select a payment and click to change the settlement bank account. If more than one payment is selected, the payments must be in the same currency.</td></tr>
<tr><td>UnSelect Payments</td><td>Click to reverse the status of settlements that are pending approval. After you clear a payment, the system changes the Status field to Unselected.</td></tr>
</table>

Reviewing Settlements for Financial Sanctions

Access the Sanction Review page (select payments on the Select Settlements page that fail the financial sanctions validation).

This page displays settlements that have payees who potential match those listed on the financial sanctions list.

Sanction Detail	Click to view details of the payee on the Financial Sanctions Entry page.
Clear Settlement	After selecting and reviewing the settlement, click to allow further processing of the settlement.
Deny Settlement	After selecting and reviewing the settlement, click to deny further processing of the settlement.
Return	Click to return to the Select Settlements page.

Using Payment Life Cycle Functionality

Access the Treasury Payment Life-Cycle page (click View Payments Life Cycle on the Select Settlements page).

Treasury Payment Life-Cycle page

The buttons at the top of the page—Payment Created, Awaiting Selection, Awaiting Approval,Awaiting Dispatch, Payment Processed, and Payment Reconciled—become linked and change from black and white to color when that specific action occurs for the payment. Click a button to access the associated page and view the indicated life-cycle information.

Payment Details	View summary information about the settlement. The Status and Recon Status field values change as you process the settlement.
Payment Events	View date, time, and descriptive information about each event that you perform on the settlement.

See Also

Manually Approving Settlements

This section discusses how to manually approve settlement payments. You need to manually approve or deny settlements if you do not configure automatic Settlement Approval Workflow.

Pages Used to Manually Approve Settlements

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Approve Settlements	STL_SELECTION	Cash Management, Settlements, Approve Settlements	Authorize the release of scheduled treasury settlement transactions.
Settlement Approval - Preferences	STL_SELECTION_PREF	Click Preferences on the Approve Settlements page.	Set up the default criteria for searching for settlements for approval.

Manually Approving Settlement Payments

Access the Approve Settlements page (Cash Management, Settlements, Approve Settlements).

Approve Settlements page

Settlement Search Criteria

Enter the search criteria and click Search to display a list of payments.

Status	Select a status value of *Approved, Denied,* or *Selected.* The selected value determines what settlement action buttons are available to you.

Payments - (All)

Approve Payments	Select payments and click to approve settlements for payment processing. The Status of the payments changes to *Approved* and is sent to Financial Gateway.

> **Note.** The status will not change immediately to *Approved* if the system is configured to use workflow for settlements requiring additional approval based on the dollar amount.

> **Note.** Settlements associated with a deal that requires deal approval, will not be available for approval until the deal itself is first approved.

See Appendix B, "Delivered Workflows for Cash Management," page 313.

Deny Payments		Select payments and click to deny settlements for payment processing. The Status of the payments changes to *Denied.*
		Note. You cannot deny a payment once the automated accounting process is run for the settlement.
		See Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Processing Accounting Entries, page 233.

Note. You define settlement approval options on the Treasury Options page. If you enable settlement approval workflow, do not use this page to approve settlements. Instead, the system changes the settlement status to *Approved* when Virtual Approver finds that the item passes the approval rules that are defined under workflow.

You establish the workflow approval rule definition at implementation. PeopleSoft delivers a rule in the database for the Approval Rule Set called Execute Treasury Settlements.

See *PeopleTools PeopleBook: Workflow Technology, "Defining Approval Processes," Understanding Virtual Approver*

See Also

Chapter 10, "Working with Settlements," Settlement Workflow, page 186

Appendix B, "Delivered Workflows for Cash Management," page 313

Using the Settlement Manager

Use the Settlement Manager to review all of the settlements from a central location. You can see the gross daily exposure, make projections, and view exposures according to counterparty. In addition, you can select a settlement category to review and approve settlements from the same page.

This section discusses how to:

*   Use the Settlement Manager.

*   Set Settlement Manager preferences.

Pages Used with the Settlement Manager

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Navigation*	*Usage*
Settlement Manager	STL_MGR	Cash Management, Settlements, Settlement Manager	Review and manage all settlement activity from a central location.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Settlement Manager - Preferences	STL_MGR_PREF	Click Preferences on the Settlement Manager page.	Set up default search criteria for the Settlement Manager.
Cash Flow Settlements	RUN_TRC1014	Click Cash Flow Settlements on the Settlement Manager page.	Run the Cash Flow Settlements process (RUN_TRC1014) to generate the a report that lists bank, account, and settlement information for cash flows of a specified business unit and time period.
Review Settlements	STL_SELECTION	Cash Management, Settlements, Review Settlements	View the payments that are scheduled for authorization and release.
Settlements User Preferences	STL_SELECTION_PREF	Click Preferences on the Review Settlements page.	Set up the default criteria for handling settlements.

Using the Settlement Manager

Access the Settlement Manager page (Cash Management, Settlements, Settlement Manager).

Settlement Manager page

This manager displays settlement categories with summarized information. To view the content of a settlement category, click the link that is located on the right in each category.

Show Data for	Select to view data of:
	• *Today*
	• *Last 7 Days*
	• *Last 30 Days*
	• *Next 7 Days*
	• *Next 30 Days*
Preferences	Click to establish the default search criteria for Settlement Manager.
Net Deal Settlements	Click to access the Net Deal Settlements page, and view deal transactions that are coming up for netting.
Select Settlements	Click to access the Select Settlements page, and view which settlements are available for selection.
Approve Settlements	Click to access the Approve Settlements page, and view which settlements are coming up for approval.

| **Review Settlements** | Click to access the Review Settlements page and review settlement information. |

| **Cash Flow Settlements** | Click to access the Cash Flow Settlements page and generate the Cash Flow Settlement report (RUN_TRC1014). |

Setting Settlement Manager Preferences

Access the Settlement Manager Preferences page (click Preferences on the Settlement Manager page).

| **Default Time Period** | Select *Today, Last 7 Days,* or *Last 30 Days.* |

Specifying Deal Settlement Netting

This section discusses how to:

• Specify deal settlement netting.

• Select payable and receivable cash flows.

The Deal Settlement Netting page enables you to select which cash flows to net that results from deal transactions. You can view and offset cash flows by counterparty, categorized by bank account and currency per settlement date. This creates a netted cash flow record for each counterparty and currency combination by bank account.

Page Used to Specify Deal Settlement Netting

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Navigation*	*Usage*
Deal Settlement Netting	STL_NETTING	Cash Management, Settlements, Net Deal Settlements	Select which cash flows to net that resulted from deal transactions.
Settlement Details	STL_NETTING_DTL	Click Show Details on the Net Deal Settlements page.	Select to include or exclude payable and receivable cash flow actions for a deal settlement net.
Review Deal Netting	STL_NETTING_INQ	Cash Management, Settlements, Review Deal Netting	View the results of net-deal settlements (Deal Settlement Netting page).

Specifying Deal Settlement Netting

Access the Deal Settlement Netting page (Cash Management, Settlements, Net Deal Settlements).

Note. Transactions are netted depending on the settlement netting options that are set on the Counterparty Information page. For netted cash flows, you can view the transaction detail and clear any transactions that you want to exclude.

Search Criteria

Netting Status	Displays *Do Not Net* or *Net Bulk.*

Cash Flow

Detail	Click to see the individual transactions that compose the net amount. To modify which transactions are included in the net, select or clear them here.
Cpty Ref (counterparty reference)	Enter the reference ID that the counterparty provides referring to this netting transaction.
CP Nettor (counterparty nettor)	Enter the name of the person in the counterparty's organization that agreed to the net.
Net	Click to process the netting transaction.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining Netting Accounts

PeopleSoft Deal Management 9.1 PeopleBook, "Capturing Deals and Trade Tickets"

Chapter 11

Managing Investment Pools

This chapter provides an overview of investment pools and discusses how to:

- Set up investment pools.

- Add participants to an investment pool.

- Manage participants' funds.

- View investment pool positions.

- Maintaining investment pool positions.

Understanding Investment Pools

Agencies and organizations use investment pools to collect and concentrate surplus funds from various departments and programs for investment purposes. The departments and programs that deposit their surplus funds into the investment pool are referred to as participants. Each participant is assigned an individual account number in order to track their fund transactions within the investment pool.

An investment pool administrator organizes the investment pool and manages the fund's investments similar to that of a portfolio manager. The funds in the investment pool are invested by either the pool administrator or by an external investment manager. The system stores only the investment manager's contact information.

Participants do not enter transactions into the investment pool system, but rather communicate their requests to deposit, withdraw, or transfer funds to the pool administrator. The pool administrator then enters the appropriate data—participant and transaction information—into the system. Participants may transfer funds from one account to another within the same investment pool, but may not transfer funds from one account to an account belonging to another investment pool.

If the pool is set up using share accounts, then shares are distributed to the participants pool account. Share balances are then updated periodically for deposits, withdrawals, and transfers.

Interest and fees are periodically distributed among the participants of the pool.

The method used for transferring funds depends on the structure of the organization and pool's participants. Funds can be transferred by way of accounting book entries or between the participant's bank and the investment pool's bank through electronic wire transfers and Automated Clearing House (ACH) transactions.

Periodically, the investment pool transfers funds to an external investment manager (if applicable) or to the internal investment system. The investment manager provides the pool with reports containing the current market value, income, interest and fees data. Using these data, the pool administrator updates the pool with this information by entering the market value information online and in turn updates the market value for the pool and each participant. The new share price (if applicable) is also computed based on the new market values and the number of shares in the pool.

Besides providing investment and fund management expertise to the participants, the pool administrator also provides accounting and financial reporting for each participant's funds as well as consolidated reporting for the entire investment pool.

Setting Up Investment Pools

To define investment pool information, use the Investment Pool component (TRP_POOL_DEFN).

This section discusses how to:

*   Set up an investment pool.

*   Define pool investment limits.

Pages Used to Set Up an Investment Pool

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Pool Information	TRP_POOL_DEFN	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information	Define the fee, interest, and accounting ChartField information of the investment pool.
Concentration Limits	TRP_POOL_LMT_SEC	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information Click the Concentration Limits link on the Pool Information page.	Define the securities to which the investment pool funds will be invested, as well as the maximum percentage of the pool's funds that can be invested in each security.
Contact Information	TRP_POOL_CNT_SEC	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information Click the Contact Information link on the Pool Information page.	Enter contact information for the external investment managers who are investing pool funds.

Defining an Investment Pool

Access the Pool Information page (Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information).

Pool Information

Business Unit: US001   Pool ID: IP001

| Pool Details | Find \| View All First ◄ 1 of 1 ► Last |

*Effective Date: 01/01/1900 📅   *Status: [Active ▾]   ➕ ➖

*Description: Fremont University

Interest Information

*Interest Type: [Fixed Rate ▾]   *Rolling Periods: 12   *Interest Accounting Template: TRP_INTEREST 🔍

Interest Rate(%):   5.00000000   Calendar ID: Q1 🔍   Interest Document Type: TR-JG 🔍

☑ Shares Distributed for Pool   Initial Share Price: 1.00   *Currency: USD 🔍

Fee Information

*Fee Type: [N/A ▾]   Fee Accounting Template: 🔍 Fee Document Type: 🔍

Fee Rate(%):   Fee Amount:

| ChartField Details | Customize \| Find \| View All \| 🔳 \| ⊞ First ◄ 1 of 1 ► Last |

| ChartFields | Additional ChartFields | 🔳 |

Account	Oper Unit	Fund	Dept	Program	Class
000000 🔍	🔍	🔍	🔍	🔍	🔍

Concentration Limits   Notes   Contact Information   Event Log

Pool Information page

Fee Type	Specify how the fee charged to participants for maintaining the investment pool will be assessed. The options are:

- *Fee Rate:* The fee is based on a percentage of the income transactions the participant has present in the pool. Selecting this option requires that a value be entered in the Fee Rate (%) field.

- *Flat Fee:* Participants are charged a flat fee. Selecting this option requires that a value be entered in the Fee Amount field.

- *N/A:* No maintenance fees are assessed.

Fee Accounting Template	Select an existing accounting template to enter the correct accounting and debit and credit configuration for the maintenance fee.
Fee Document Type	If using document sequencing, select a document type for tracking maintenance fee transactions.
Fee Rate (%)	Enter the percentage rate for the maintenance fee charged to participants. This is a required field if *Fee Rate* was selected in the Fee Type field.
Fee Amount	Enter the amount for the maintenance fee charged to participants. This is a required field if *Flat Fee* was selected in the Fee Type field.

Interest Information

Interest Type	Select how the interest on participants' pool investments is accrued. The options are:

- *Fixed Rate:* Interest is accrued based on the amount of a participant's investment multiplied by an interest rate. Selecting this option requires a value be entered in the Interest Rate (%) field.

- *Percentage in Pool:* Interest is accrued based on return on pool's investment multiplied by the percentage of the total investment funded by the participant.

Interest Rate (%) Enter the rate at which income is allocated to the participants' pool account. A value is required here if fixed rate is selected in the Interest Type field.

Shares Distributed for Pool Select if pool is based on share accounts. Share distribution is commonly used when the interest type is fixed rate.

Initial Share Price If the investment pool issues shares, enter the initial share price. Most investment pools seek to maintain an initial net asset value of $1.00 USD per share.

Rolling Periods Enter the number of periods, based on the calendar selected, for which to calculate the interest on the average participant position over the span of the number of periods entered. For example, using a monthly calendar with three rolling periods, the interest calculation is based on the average participant position over a span of three months.

Calender ID Select the business calendar to be used for calculating accrued interest payments to the participants' pool account.

Interest Accounting Template Select an existing accounting template to enter the correct accounting and debit/credit configuration for interest accruals.

Interest Document Type If using document sequencing, select a document type to track interest accrual transactions.

ChartField Details

Enter the investment pool's ChartField information for accounting purposes.

Defining the Concentration Limits of an Investment Pool

Access the Concentration Limits page (click the Concentration Limits link on the Pool Information page.

Concentration Limits page

Use the Concentration Limits page to identify the securities to which the investment pool funds can be invested, and the maximum percentage of the pool's total investment that can be invested in the specified type of security. The Investment concentration limits are set to ensure investment diversity and are defined by the organization's investment policy.

Note. Concentration Limits page is for information only. There is no underlying functionality to enforce the maximum investment percentages for each security. Thus, the total maximum investment percentages can equal more than 100 percent.

Sequence Number	Enter the unique identifier for the security type.
Security Type	Enter a security to which to invest pool funds.
Maximum Investment	Enter the maximum percentage of the pool's total funds that can be investment in a particular security.

Adding Participants to an Investment Pool

To define investment pool participant information, use the Participant Information component (TRP_PART_DEFN).

This section provides an overview of pool participant information and discusses how to:

•   Add an agency or department as a participant of an investment pool.

•   View and adding participants' contact information.

Pool Participation Information

When an entity joins an investment pool, the organizational entity's name, and the person who is authorized to act on behalf of the entity must be recorded. In addition, the participating entity may have alternative pools in which to invest based on their investment objectives.

Each entity can have one or more accounts that tie them to a pool:

•   One account that is used for making deposits to the investment pool. (required)

•   One account that is used for tracking investment income. (optional)

Participants typically set up both accounts—deposit accounts for the depositing new funds into the pool and income accounts for accruing income from the pool. Each pool account has at least one general ledger account and related fund.

Pages Used to Add Participants to an Investment Pool

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Participant Information	TRP_PART_DEFN	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Information	Define the account details of a participant of an investment pool.
Contact Information	TRP_POOL_CNT_SEC	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information Click the Contact Information link on the Pool Information page.	View and modify a list of external investment managers responsible for investing the pool's funds.
Contact Information (Detail)	TR_CONTACT_PNL	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information Click the Add Pool Contact link on the Contact Information page.	Enter detailed contact information for an external investment manager.

Entering Investment Pool Participants' Information

Access the Participant Information page (Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Information).

Participant Information page

Note. You can import participant information by creating an ExcelToCI spreadsheet and using the TRP_PART_DEFN_CI component interface.

See *PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Component Interfaces,* "Using the Excel-to-Component Interface Utility."

Effective Date	Date current status took effect.
Business Unit	Enter the business unit to which the investment pool account belongs.
Pool ID	Enter the pool identifier to which the entity will participate.
Participant Account	Enter the account identifier for the participant's account for the specified investment pool.
Allow Withdrawal from Deposit	Select to allow the withdrawal funds from the participant's investment pool deposit account. Left unchecked, withdrawals will be allowed only from the a participant's investment pool income account.

Account Details

Enter ChartField information for a participant's investment pool deposit account, and, if required, its investment income account.

Managing Participants' Funds

This section provides and overview on participant transactions and discusses how to:

- Create a transaction between an investment pool and a participant.

- View and approve transactions between the pool and a participant.

Understanding Participant Transactions

A participant invests in a pool by moving cash into it's pool deposit account and making a request to pool administrator to deposit the cash into the pool. The pool administrator makes a record of this request using the Participant Transactions page. The actual cash transaction, however, is tracked outside of investment pools.

Because withdrawals entail an actual transfer of cash, participants have the option of creating an electronic fund transfer (EFT) for a withdrawal of funds from the bank. Clicking the Create EFT link on the Participant Transactions page accesses the EFT Request - Origin page that displays the key information required for the cash transaction. The pool administrator can save the EFT. The EFT is reconciled and accounted for in Cash Management. The relevant book entry is tracked in the investment pools component.

Deposit transactions created on the Participant Transactions page are saved as "pending" transactions. These transactions are approved on the Approve Transactions page by the pool administrator once it has been verified that the actual funds have been received through the EFT.

Besides deposits, the pool administrator also uses the Participant Transactions page to maintain records of all requests to withdraw, or transfer investment pool funds on behalf of its participants. All transactions are managed from within the pool by the pool administrator. Some of these transactions can be scheduled in advance. Records of recent pending activity and completed activity are retained. Participants can also view a listing of transactions on the View Transactions page, which is similar to the Approve Transactions page, but without the transaction approval functionality.

Pages Used to Create Participant Transactions

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Participant Transactions	TRP_PART_TXN	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Transactions	Used by the pool administrator to record a participant's request to deposit, withdraw, or transfer funds among a participant's investment pool accounts.
Approve Transactions	TRP_TXN_APPR	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Approve Transactions	Review and approve or reject transactions initiated by participants of an investment pool.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
View Transactions	TRP_TXN_APPR	Cash Management, Investment Pools, View Transactions	View all investment pool transactions matching the defined search criteria. **Note.** Provides a view of transactions related to an investment pool to users who do not have access to the Approve Transactions page because they are not authorized to approve or reject transactions. The View Transactions page is identical to the Approve Transactions page without the approval functionality.

Creating Participant Transactions

Access the Participant Transactions page (Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Transactions).

Participant Transactions

Transaction Information

Business Unit: US001   Pool ID: IP001   Fremont University

Participant ID: PT001   Math Fund

Account: PA001   Account Type: Deposit   Transaction ID: 1

Transaction Type: Deposit

Transaction Details

Description: Initial deposit   Status: Approved

Amount: 10,000.00   Currency: USD

Date: 04/15/2005

Accounting Template ID: TRP_DEPOSIT   Document Type: TR-JG

Audit Information

Entered by: SAMPLE   Entered On: 04/15/05 6:13PM

Participant Transactions page

Note. You can import participant transactions by creating an ExcelToCI spreadsheet and using the TRP_PART_TXN_CI component interface.

See *PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Component Interfaces* "Using the Excel-to-Component Interface Utility."

Transaction Type	Displays the type of transaction being initiated by the pool participant. The options are:
	• *Deposit:* Participants can make a deposit only to a pool deposit account and selecting Deposit from the To Account Type field.
	• *Withdrawal:* Participants can withdraw funds from income accounts. They can also withdraw from a deposit account only if Allow Withdrawal from Deposit is selected on Participant Information page.
	• *Transfer:* Transfers are allowed between different accounts of a participant within the same pool, however, a participant cannot transfer funds from a deposit account to an income account.
Status	All newly created transactions are given a status of *Pending* until the pool administrator has approved or denied them. Pool administrators can *Deny* the transaction or *Approve* it. Approval for withdrawal transactions are contingent upon verification of the transfer of funds from the bank by the pool administrator.
To Account	Used only for fund transfer requests. Enter an account to which to transfer the funds.
To Account Type	Used only for fund transfer requests. Select either Deposit or Income. Transferring funds from an deposit account to an income account are not allowed.
Date	Enter a date for completing the transaction. The transaction date must be after the last accounting date for transactions of the pool (viewable in the Position Details grid on the Participant Position page), or the transaction will be rejected.
Transfer Template ID	Select a transfer template to facilitate the transfer of funds with parties with which you conduct regular, specific transactions. Fields from the template selected here are used as default values when creating an EFT for withdrawal transactions.
	Note. Expired templates are not available for selection.
Transaction Accounting Template	Select the accounting template that depicts the correct accounting and debit/credit configuration for the particular transaction.
Document Type	Select the document type that the system uses to assign document sequence numbers.
Create EFT	Click to access the EFT Request - Origin page to request a physical transfer of funds—withdrawal—based on the parameters of the current participant transaction request defined on this page and fields from the selected transfer template. This link appears on the page only for withdrawal transactions.

See Also

PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook, "Defining Document Sequencing"

Chapter 9, "Transferring Funds," Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates, page 160

Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Accounting Templates, page 221

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts"

Approving Investment Pool Transactions

Access the Approve Transactions page (Cash Management, Investment Pools, Approve Transactions).

Approve Transactions page

Use the Search Criteria to define the transactions related to a business unit and investment pool. To approve a transaction, check the corresponding Selectbox and click Approve. To deny the transaction, click Deny.

Viewing Investment Pool Positions

This section discusses how to:

- View pool positions.

- View participants' positions.

- View position details for a single participant.

Pages Used to Manage Investment Pool Positions

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Pool Position	TRP_POOL_POS	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Position	View the current position of an investment pool.
Position History	TRP_POOL_POS_DTL	Click the Market Values/Incomes link on the Pool Position page.	View the historical market values and income transactions of the investment pool. Income updates are added using the Update Pool Position page.
Participant Position	TRP_PART_POS	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Position	View the cash investment, balances, and income of an investment pool's participants.
Position Details	TRP_PART_POS_DTL	• Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Position Click the Details link for specific investment pool. • Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Position Click the Details link for specific participant.	If accessed from the Pool Position page, you can view the cash investment, balances, and income of a specified investment pool. If accessed from the Participant Position page, you can view the cash investment, balances, transactions, and income of a participant of a specified investment pool.
Participant Transaction	TRP_PART_TXN	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Position, Details link Click the Transaction ID link of a specific transaction.	View details of a specific transaction of a pool's participant.

Viewing Pool Positions

Access the Pool Position page (Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Position).

Pool Position page

Market Value	Displays the current value of the investment pool based on the last reported sale price of securities to which the pool funds are invested.
Book Value	Displays the previous market value of the pool.
Change in Market Value	Displays the change in the market value of the pool since the last time the pool position was updated.
Shares	If shares are used, this field displays the number of shares of the investment pool.
Share Price	Displays the current price of investment pool shares.
Update Pool Position	Click to access the Update Pool Position page to manually update the pool's cash position. See Chapter 11, "Managing Investment Pools," Updating Pool Positions Manually, page 218.
Market Values/Incomes	Click to access the Position History page to view the historical market values and position updates of the investment pool.

You can generate a report of a pool's position as well as the positions of each pool's participants for a specified business unit.

See Also

Appendix C, "Cash Management Reports," Cash Management Reports: A to Z, page 315

Viewing Participants' Pool Positions

Access the Participant Position page (Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Position).

Participant Position page

This page displays the position and information of all participants' accounts for a specified pool.

Details	Click to access the Position Details page that lists the participant's transactions. Details of the transactions can be accessed from the Position Details page.

You can generate a report of a pool's position as well as the positions of each pool's participants for a specified business unit.

See Also

Appendix C, "Cash Management Reports," Cash Management Reports: A to Z, page 315

Maintaining Pool Positions

This section provides an overview of the investment pool maintenance process discusses how to:

• Import pool position data from an external investment management source.

- Manually update pool positions.

- Distribute investment pool income.

Updating Investment Pools

In order to have an accurate view of an investment pool's position, as well as the position of its participants, you must periodically update the investment data. To do so requires importing income and fee data from external investment managers into the pool and distributing it among the pools participants.

There are two ways to update investment pool data:

- Import the data in a flat-file format from the Import Pool Position page.

  A file layout already provided will need to be modified along with its transformation code.

- Obtain a hard copy of the data and manually enter it using the Update Pool Position page.

Once the pool has been updated, run the Income Distribution Application Engine process (TRP_INC_DIST) to update the pool's participant positions by distributing the income and maintenance fees among them.

Pages Used to Update Pool Positions

Page Name	*Definition Name*	*Navigation*	*Usage*
Layout Catalog	PMT_FORMAT_CATLOG	Banking, Administer Bank Integration, Layout Catalog	Define and configure the files that will be used to import a flat file containing pool position data into the system. **Note.** Modify the POOL file layout to define your pool-position, flat file. See *PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Electronic Banking Using Financial Gateway," Configuring Bank Statement, Payment, and Payment Acknowledgment Layouts.
Import Pool Position	BSP_IMPORT	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Import Pool Position	Update an investment pool's position by importing data in a flat file format from an outside investment source.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Update Pool Position	TRP_POOL_POS_ADD	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Position Click the Update Pool Position link.	Manually update the pool's cash position with current values obtained from outside investment sources. Obtaining the updated pool data may require running the Import Pool Position process.
Income Distribution	TRP_INC_RUN	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Income Distribution	Run the Income Distribution Application Engine (TRP_INC_DIST) process to disburse investment pool income and maintenance fees among participants based on the parameters set on the Pool Information page.

Importing Pool Position Data

Access the Import Pool Position page (Cash Management, Investment Pools, Import Pool Position).

Import Pool Position page

Parameters

Import Type	Select the method for importing the data file. The options are: • *FTP:* Select if you are importing the file by using file transfer protocol, and enter a bank node through which to transfer the data. • *File:* Select if you are importing a file, and complete the File Path and File Name fields. • *HTTP:* Select if you are importing a file using a URL that is included as part of the node configuration. No file path or file name is required.
Integration Node	Enter the integration node used to transfer the data. This field appears only if FTP or HTTP is selected as the Import Type. See *PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Integration Broker Administration,* "Adding and Configuring Nodes." See *PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Integration Broker Administration,* "Using Listening Connectors and Target Connectors," Working With the AS2 Connectors. See *PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Electronic Banking Using Financial Gateway."
View Integration Node Details	Click to access the Integration Node Details page and review property details of the selected node. This link appears only if FTP or HTTP is selected as the Import Type.
File Path	Enter the complete file path location. To select files by using the Select File button, the file path must have a trailing backslash (\). You can also search for files of a specific type by entering an asterisk and the extension suffix. For example, to search all files with a .txt suffix enter `\*.txt`.
File Selection Help	Click to view help information on specifying file paths and file names.
File Name	Select the specific file to import. If you want to import multiple files based on extension, leave this field blank.

Advanced Options

Encryption Profile	Select an encryption profile to decrypt the data file. Encryption profiles contain both encryption and decryption information.

Use Integration Broker   Select this check box to format the files and publish the formatted document to PeopleSoft Integration Broker. Integration Broker then processes the formatted file accordingly.

You select this option if you want to use the pool position information as a trigger for Integration Broker to perform other processes, or to integrate with other systems.

Post Process File Action   Select what action, if any, to be performed on the pool position data file after the data has been processed. The options are:

- *Copy:* Copy the file to the directory entered in the Post Process File Directory field.

- *Delete:* Delete the file after the data in it is processed.

- *Move:* Move the file to the directory entered in the Post Process File Directory field.

- *None:* Take no action. The data file remains unprocessed.

Post Process File Directory   Enter a file path to the directory to which the file will be moved or copied if either option is selected as the Post Process File Action.

See Also

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Integration Broker, Configuring Nodes and Transactions

Updating Pool Positions Manually

Access the Update Pool Position page (click the Update Pool Position link on the Pool Position page).

Update Pool Position page

Position Type	Select the type of position being updated. The options are:
	• *Market Value:* Update the current value of the investment pool based on the last reported sale price of securities to which the pool funds are invested.
	• *Interest:* Updated the interests accrued on the pool's investments.
Amount	Enter the new market value of the investment pool.
Accounting Template ID	Select the accounting template for the pool that depicts the correct accounting and debit and credit configuration for this update transaction.
Document Type	Select the document type that the system uses to assign document sequence numbers.
Participant Acctg Template ID	Select the accounting template for the participants account that depicts the correct accounting and debit and credit configuration for this update transaction.

Chapter 12

Managing Treasury Accounting

This chapter provides an overview of the Treasury Management accounting process and discusses how to:

- Establish accounting templates.

- Process accounting entries.

- Manage accounting entries.

- Review accounting information.

- Maintain fiscal period closure.

Understanding the Treasury Management Accounting Process

You use accounting templates to define the ChartFields to use for various kinds of accounting activities, called *accounting events.* By associating accounting templates with accounting events, you can automate most of the accounting process. In addition, you can also manually adjust accounting entries and create ad hoc entries.

Accounting Templates

The accounting template depicts the correct accounting and debit and credit configuration for a given treasury transaction and business event. For example, the purchase of a U.S. Treasury bond may involve the construction of two debit lines, Bonds Receivable and Unamortized Bond Discount, as well as one credit line, Cash. The accounting template for this type of transaction would include three predefined records to depict this particular debit or credit configuration.

The accounting template contains the following characteristics:

- A unique template ID.

- Options that determine how the correct ChartField combination is selected.

- An attribute (calculation type) that describes how the accounting monetary amount is calculated or derived.

- An attribute that designates whether the accounting build requires review.

Accounting Events

An accounting event describes an event in the treasury business process that triggers the construction of a pending accounting build.

Oracle delivers the following treasury accounting event types with the system:

- Deal transactions.

- Facility, deal, wire, and letter of credit fees.

- Bank transfers.

- Bank statement processing transactions.

- Hedges.

- Electronic File Transfer (EFT) requests.

- Internal account interest.

- Investment pool transactions.

To automate accounting entries, you assign each accounting event type to a corresponding accounting template for all accounting events except bank transfers. Bank transfers do not have accounting templates because the accounting is derived from the bank and business unit of the bank. The template controls which ChartFields and monetary amounts to use in each accounting entry.

For treasury deals, you define the accounting event at the instrument level. You associate each instrument with various accounting events, depending on the instrument base type. In addition, you define each accounting event based on the accounting treatment (Held to Maturity, Available for Sale, Trading, or Other) and assign each accounting template to the appropriate accounting treatment. At deal entry, you select the appropriate accounting treatment. The system then automatically associates the appropriate accounting template, based on the accounting treatment of the instrument type.

The following diagram illustrates the process flow:
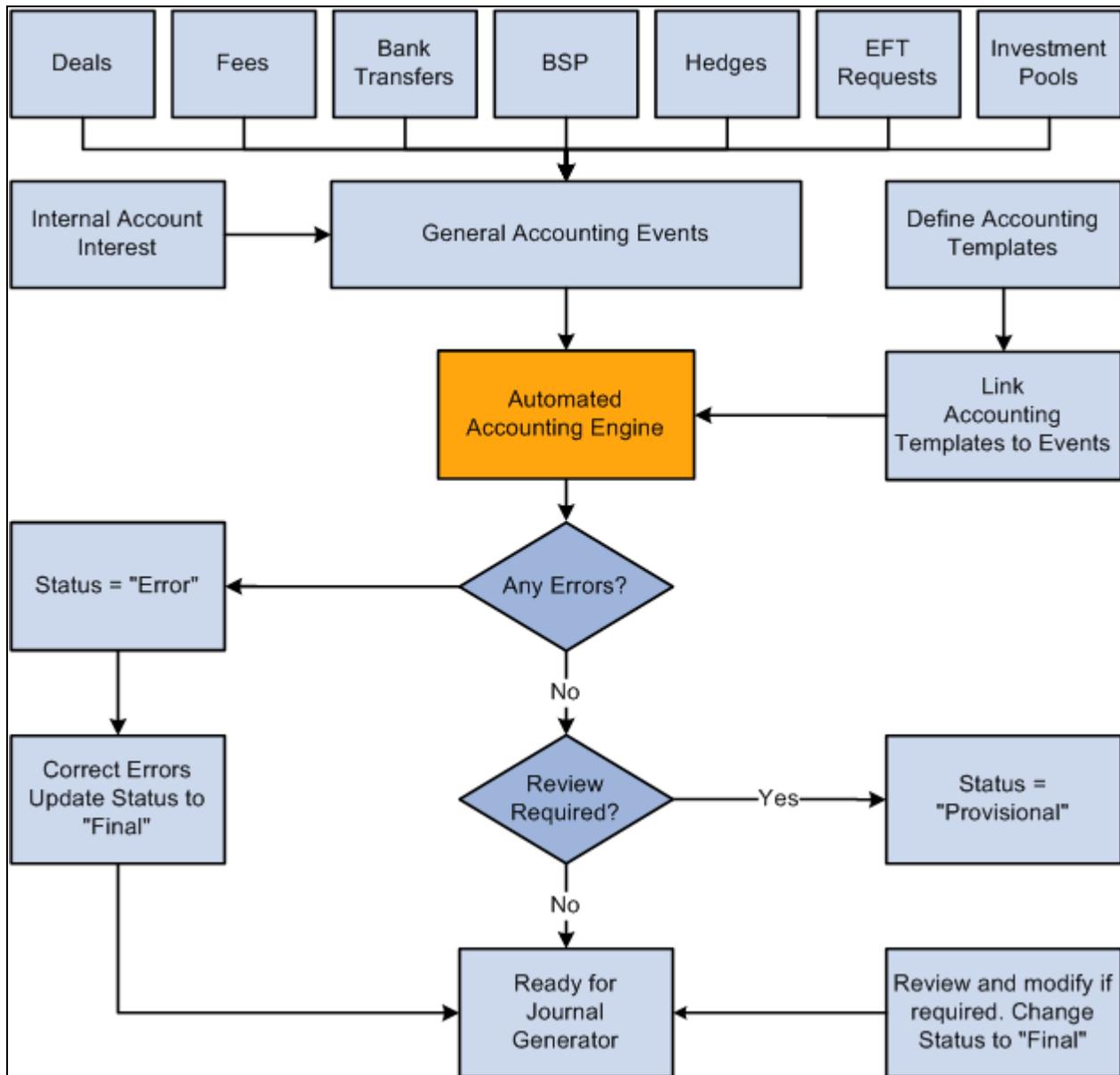
Process flow for treasury accounting

Interunit and Intraunit Processing in Accounting

The PeopleSoft centralized processor generates the due-to and due-from entries for both interunit and intraunit balancing. PeopleSoft Treasury Management provides functionality to support interunit and intraunit processing using the centralized processor on the Accounting Template and Accounting Entries pages.

Interunit and Intraunit Balancing Methods

Interunit refers to balancing transactions that involve two general ledger business units. The bank accounts contain the ChartFields and the rules by which their values should be determined.

Intraunit refers to balancing transactions within the same general ledger business unit in which the transaction involves more than one value on the lower level balancing ChartField. For all transactions that Treasury Management generates, the system obtains the ChartFields from either the bank account or an accounting template. Inherited ChartFields obtain their values from the corresponding ChartField on the offsetting entry.

Treasury System Transaction Definitions

To facilitate interunit and intraunit processing, you segregate your interunit and intraunit payable and receivable accounts by the type of transaction. The interunit and intraunit system transactions are a predefined list of transactions, with one system transaction for each major type of Treasury transaction that generates interunit and intraunit entries. By defining transaction codes and associating them with system transactions, you control the level by which you segregate your Interunit and intraunit balances.

Important! Oracle delivers predefined system transactions, which you can view on the System Transaction Definition page. You should not change the information on this page because it affects the intraunit and interunit processing.

See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Using Interunit and Intraunit Accounting and ChartField Inheritance," Running the Centralized Interunit and Intraunit Processor.

This table associates a system-defined transaction with a PeopleSoft accounting source.

Accounting Source	*System Transactions*
Deals	TRDEAL
Hedges	TRHEDGE
Letter of Credit, Deal, Facility, or EFT Fees	TRFEE
Bank Statement Items	TRBSP
EFT Requests	TREFT
Bank Transfers	TRBAX
Interunit Interest	TRIUINT
Manual Entry	TRMANUAL
Investment Pools	TRINPOOL

Intraunit and Interunit Accounting Entries Generation Using the Centralized Processor

Here is an overview of the process:

1. Specify an anchor entry in the accounting template as a model for any interunit and intraunit entries.

   The anchor entry cannot be a line where the ChartField is determined by Bank Account.

2. Process treasury accounting using the Automated Accounting process (TR_ACCTG), which invokes the centralized processor. The centralized processor automatically creates any necessary offset entries that are tagged with the source identifier label *System IU* (viewable on the Additional Details tab of the Accounting Entries page) and inserts these data into the accounting tables.

3. If you make any changes to an accounting entry line, you must click the Update Accounting button to invoke the centralized processor and regenerate accounting entries.

See Also

Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Entering Accounting Template Information, page 226

Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Processing Automated Accounting, page 235

PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook, "Using Interunit and Intraunit Accounting and ChartField Inheritance," Product Interface and System Transaction Categorization

Establishing Accounting Templates

To define accounting templates, use the Accounting Templates component (ACCTG_TEMPLATES).

This section discusses how to:

1. Enter accounting template information.

2. Define additional substitution criteria.

3. Link templates with associated accounting events.

Pages Used to Establish Accounting Templates

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Template	TRA_TMPL_DETL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates	Enter general accounting template and template line information.
Substitution Rule	TRA_SUB_RULE	Select the Substitution Rule tab on the Template page.	Specify a different ChartField for a template line when certain criteria exist.
VAT Defaults Setup	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Click VAT Defaults link on the Template page.	Define value-added tax (VAT) default processing options for the specified accounting template.

Entering Accounting Template Information

Access the Accounting Templates - Template page (Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates).

Accounting Template - Template page

Requires Review	Select to force review of the accounting transactions that use this template.
	When you select this check box, the system assigns error-free accounting entries and a status of *Provisional.* To finalize the provisional entry, use the View/Approve Entries page to review and change the status to *Final.*
	If you do not select this check box, the system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template and a status of *Final.*
Source Type	Displays the source of the accounting entry, which can be *BSP* (bank statement processing), *Deals, Fees, Hedge Accounting, Interest, EFT Requests,* or *Investment Pools.*
Status	Indicate whether this accounting template is *Active* or *Inactive.* This determines which templates are available to users. The system selects only active accounting templates for display and use.
	This feature enables you to:

- Retain all the accounting templates that you create, both current and discontinued.

- Research the accounting for all your accounting entries, whether the respective accounting template is active or not.

When an accounting template is marked inactive, it is not available for processing, but is retained for historical reference. If you need to review accounting entries processed by an inactive accounting template, the template is still present in the system.

Document Type	Select the document type to use as the basis for assigning document sequencing numbers to these types of transactions.

VAT Defaults(value-added tax defaults)	Click to access the VAT Defaults Setup page.
	The VAT Defaults Setup page is a common page used to set up VAT defaults for all PeopleSoft applications that process VAT transactions. On this page, you can define accounting template defaults as applicable. You must first specify one of the accounting lines as a VAT-applicable line to establish VAT defaults for this template.

Line Detail Tab

Select the Calc Type (calculation type) to use on each template line—this varies depending on the source type. For deal-related calculation types, you must also specify a transaction line and leg of the deal.

The following table lists each available calculation type by source type.

Source Type	*Available Calculation Types*
Bank Statement Processing (BSP)	Cashflow Amount
Fees	Cashflow Amount
Fees	Fee Accrued
Deals	Cashflow Amount
Deals	Deal Amount
Deals	Price
Deals	Purchased Interest
Deals	Interest Compounded into Principal
Deals	Interest Accrued
Deals	Mark to Market Gain/Loss
Deals	Forward Points
Deals	FX Deal Cash-flow Amount
Deals	Forward Points Accrued

Source Type	*Available Calculation Types*
Deals	Maturity Interest
Deals	Maturity Principal
Deals	Amortized Discount/Premium
Deals	Sale Current Accounted Value
Deals	Premium Accrued
Deals	Sale Settlement
Deals	Sale Price (Clean)
Deals	Sold Accrued Interest
Deals	Gain/Loss on Sale
Deals	Accumulated MTM Gain/Loss
Deals	Bond Discount/Premium
Deals	Principal Payment
Deals	Interest Payment
Deals	Amounts Rolled Out
Deals	Principal Rolled Out
Deals	Interest Rolled Out
Deals	Amounts Rolled In
Deals	Principal Rolled In

Source Type	Available Calculation Types
Deals	Interest Rolled In
Deals	Write-Off Unamort Disc/Premium
Deals	Write-Off Unamort Fee
Deals	Day Delay Price
Deals	Day Delay Purchased Interest
Deals	Dividend Payment
Deals	FV Excluded time Value G/L
Deals	CF Excluded Time Value G/L
Deals	FX Net Investment Excluded G/L
Deals	Fair Value Hedge Gain/Loss
Deals	Cash Flow Hedge Gain/Loss
Deals	FX Net Investment Gain/Loss
Deals	Not Hedge Designated Gain/Loss
Hedges	Fair Value Hedged Item G/L
Hedges	Firm Commitment to Carrying
Hedges	Amortize Adj to Carrying
Hedges	De-recognize Firm Commitment
Hedges	AOCI Adjustments

Source Type	*Available Calculation Types*
Hedges	AOCI Reclassify
Hedges	Will Not Occur-AOCI Reclassify
Interest	Cashflow Amount
Investment Pools	Cashflow Amount
Investment Pools	Interest Payment
Investment Pools	Mark-to-Market Gain/Loss
EFT Requests	Cashflow Amount

Trans Line (transaction line)   For Deals source type, indicates the line from the deal instrument. All other sources have a default of *1*.

Leg   Indicates the deal accounting leg number.

IU Anchor (interunit anchor)   Specify one line of the template as the anchor. This is a required field because the centralized processor uses it to generate interunit entries. The anchor line cannot be a line where the ChartField is determined by bank account.

Sign   Select the numerical sign for a transaction *Credit, Debit, Keep Sign,* or *Rev Sign* (reverse sign).

Determined by   Indicate how to inherit ChartField values for the specified template line. Values are:

Bank Account: ChartField values are inherited from the bank account that is specified by the source transaction. Fields on the ChartField tab for this line are then disabled.

Explicit ChartField: You define specific ChartField values on the ChartField tab.

Acct Type (account type)   If the ChartField is determined by bank account, then you must choose the General Ledger account type. For Treasury, select *Cash Account.*

If the ChartField is determined by Explicit ChartField, then leave this field blank.

ChartFields Tab

Enter the appropriate ChartField values.

Template Lines - Chartfields tab

Stat (statistic)	Select a statistics code for the specific accounting line. This field can be edited on the accounting entry.
VAT Line (value-added tax line)	Click to specify that VAT is applicable for this accounting line. You can specify VAT options only for accounts with:

- The VAT Applicable Flag check box selected on the Account page.

  See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," Adding Account Values.

- Source types of *BSP* or *Fees.*

See Also

Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Entering Accounting Template Information, page 226

PeopleSoft General Ledger 9.1 PeopleBook, "Using Statistics"

Defining Additional Substitution Criteria

Access the Substitution Rule page (select the Substitution Rule tab on the Template page).
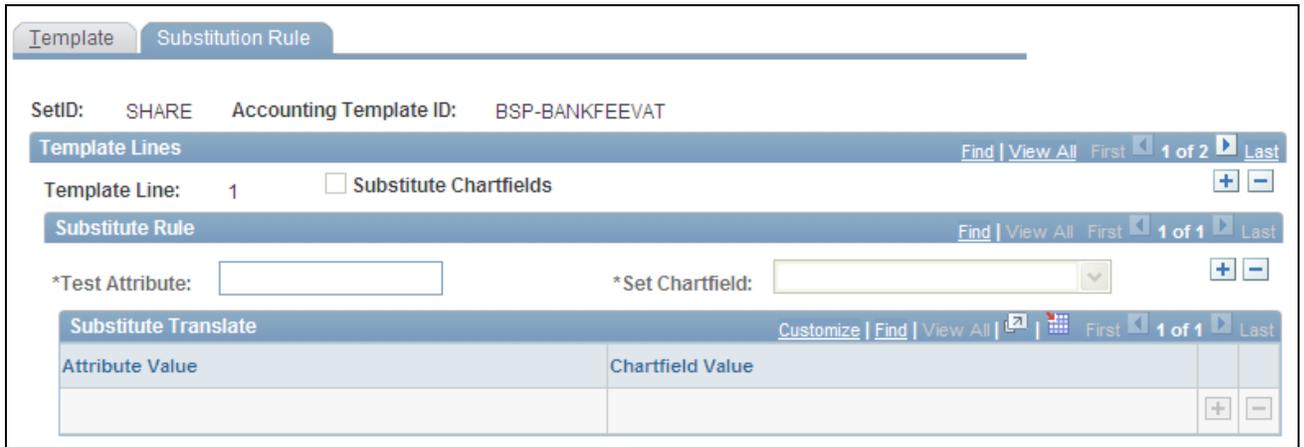
Accounting Template - Substitution Rule page

Use substitution rule functionality to make minor adjustments to templates without having to rebuild them. For example, you might require that certain departments perform deal accounting on deals by dealers by specifying criteria for each dealer's user ID. In this example, when the DEALER_OPRID equals a particular dealer, such as BIA1, then the department ChartField equals 13000.

Substitute ChartFields	Select to specify which template line is affected by a rule. You define criteria for each line
Test Attribute	Define the database object to test in. Your selection for this field determines the available attribute values. You can have more than one substitute rule per template line, but additional rules must control a different ChartField value.
Set ChartField	Select which ChartField to set against the test attribute, and enter the ChartField value in the ChartField Value field to substitute when the defined test attribute equals the specified attribute value.

Linking Templates with the Associated Accounting Events

Accounting events are linked with their corresponding accounting templates on various pages, as defined in this table:

Accounting Event Source	*Page Name*	*Navigation*
Bank Statement items	External Transactions	Banking, Reconcile Statements, External Transactions, Transactions Detail tab, Accounting Template ID field
Deals	Accounting Templates	Deal Management, Administer Deals, Define Instruments, Accounting Templates

Accounting Event Source	Page Name	Navigation
EFT Requests	EFT Template	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Requests, Origin tab, Template ID field
Letter of Credit, Deal, Facility, or Wire Fees	Fee Codes	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes, Fee CodesExpense Template or Accrual Template field
Hedges	Deal Accounting	Risk Management, Analyze Hedge, Hedges, Deal Accounting
Hedges	Item Accounting	Risk Management, Administer Risk, Hedged Item Sources
Investment Pools	Pool Information Participant Transactions Pool Position	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Transactions Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Position

Processing Accounting Entries

This section presents a diagram of the inbound and outbound transaction process and provides an overview of the Automated Accounting Build process and discusses how to process automated accounting.

Understanding the Inbound and Outbound Transaction Process Flow

During processing, the program calls the centralized processor to generate interunit and intraunit balancing (IU_PROCESSOR).

These diagrams illustrate the inbound and outbound transaction processes.
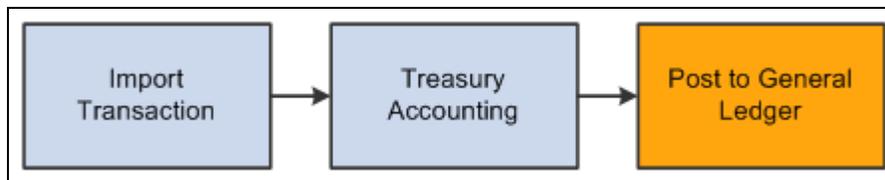
Inbound transaction process
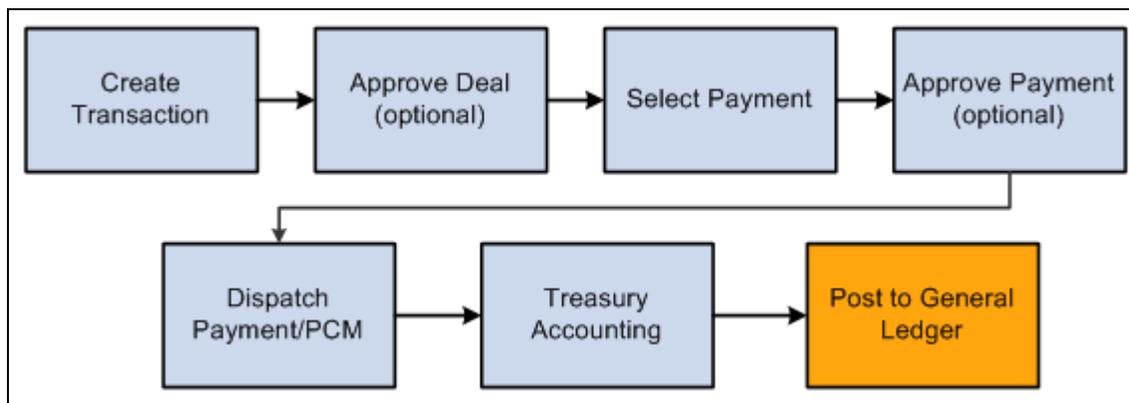
Outbound transaction process

Understanding the Automated Accounting Build Process

The Automated Accounting process populates the treasury accounting event calendar with transaction reference information, event type, event date, template ID, and processing state.

When specific processing events occur (as shown in the following table), the program that builds automatic accounting entries selects any unprocessed transactions from the treasury accounting event calendar and copies them into the Accounting Entries table.

Accounting Event Type	*Processing Event*
Treasury Deals	The open deal is saved and the Cash Flows button is clicked.
Bank Transfers, EFT transfers	The transaction is dispatched.
Fees and Charges	Fees are saved.
Mark to Market	During revaluation processing.
Investment Pools	• Participant transactions are approved. • Pool positions are updated. • Income Distribution Application Engine process (TRP_INC_DIST) is run.

When the underlying data are established, the Automated Accounting process works in the following way:

1. Selects unprocessed records with the correct event date from the Accounting Event table.

   • Processes inbound cash flows unconditionally upon receipt of cash.

   • Processes outbound cash flows after transactions have been approved and sent to the bank.

2. Constructs the ChartField combination according to the appropriate accounting template.

   If ChartField combination errors occur, the system will insert error details for each of the accounting entries. You can review and fix these ChartField combination errors by accessing the Accounting Entries component.

3. Retrieves the correct monetary amount according to the calculation type.

Page Used to Process Accounting Entries

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Automated Accounting	TRA_ACCTG_REQ	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Automated Accounting	Run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for the Journal Generator (FSPGJGEN) process.

Processing Automated Accounting

Access the Automated Accounting page (Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Automated Accounting).

Automated Accounting page

Note. The process creates accounting entries even if errors occur. Use the Accounting Entries page to correct any errors, and then change the status from *Error* to *Provisional.* Use the View/Approve Entries page to change the status from *Provisional* to *Final.*The accounting entries are then ready for General Ledger. You do not have to rerun the Automated Accounting process.

Managing Accounting Entries

This section lists common elements used in this section and discusses how to:

• Adjust accounting entries.

• Create ad hoc accounting entries.

• Review and approve accounting entries

• View the accounting summary.

Common Elements Used in This Section

Created By	Displays the userID of the user who created the entry.
Created Dttm (created date and time)	Displays the entry creation date and time.
Last Changed By	Displays the userID of the most recent user to edit the entry.
Last Dttm (last updated date and time)	Displays the most recent modification date and time.

Source Code   Indicates the source for the accounting entry or fee. Values are:

- *(none)*

- *BSP* (bank statement processing)

- *Bank Xfers* (bank transfers)

- *Deal Fees*

- *Deals*

- *EFT Fees*

- *EFTs*

- *Fac Fees* (facilities fees)

- *Hedges*

- *Interest*

- *LC Fees* (letter of credit fees)

- *Other*

- *Pools*

- *Securities*

Pages Used to Manage Accounting Entries

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Accounting Entries	TRA_ACCTG_LINE	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries	- Review and adjust automated accounting entries. - Create manual accounting entries online.
View/Approve Entries	TRA_ACCTG_LINE	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, View/Approve Entries	Approve accounting entries that are awaiting review.
Accounting Summary	TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Summary	View line-by-line accounting events. You can retrieve information according to ad hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Treasury VAT Information	TRV_ACCTG_LINE_VAT	Click VAT on the Accounting Entries page.	Review VAT information for a VAT-applicable accounting entry line.

Adjusting Accounting Entries

Access the Accounting Entries page (Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries).

Accounting Entries page

Event   Displays a descriptive label for the accounting entry, based on the source code value.

Source Code   Displays the accounting entry source, as processed by the Automated Accounting process, or entered on a manual accounting entry.

Source ID   Displays the unique identification number on the source side for the accounting entry.

Acctg Date (accounting date)   Displays the date that the entry was processed through Automated Accounting, or entered as a manual accounting entry.

Status	Indicates the current condition of the accounting entry. Values are:
	Provisional: The entry is not finalized. You can make any required changes.
	Error: An error exists within the accounting entry. The system assigns this status—you cannot select it. When you correct an error, change the status to *Provisional.* After the status has been changed to *Provisional,* use the View/Approve Entries page to change the status to *Final.* The entry is then ready for the Journal Generator process—you do not need to reprocess it.
	Final: The entry is ready for Journal Generator processing and is free from errors.
	Until the entry is processed through the Journal Generator process, you can continue to make changes to it, even if the status is *Final.* When the Journal Generator processes the entry, the distribution status changes to *Distributed,* indicating that it has been posted to a General Ledger journal and no further modifications can be made.
Acctg Template (accounting template)	Displays the name of the accounting template that is attached to the accounting entry.

Note. If you use General Ledger, you can automatically reverse any unrealized gain/loss accounting that is generated by Treasury Management at the next accounting period. You need to create a journal template for this type of treasury accounting and enable the feature for automatic journal reversal. You must assign this journal template to the treasury accounting template for General Ledger to perform the automatic reversals.

Error	Indicates the error source of an automated accounting entry. Values are:
	None: No error condition exists. This appears when the status is provisional or final.
	Unbalanced: Debits do not equal credits, or debits and credits are not equal, but refer to different General Ledger business units.
	CF Combo Error (ChartField combination error): The ChartField generated is invalid.
	No Exchange Rate: The currency exchange rate for the applicable currency pair is missing. The base amount could not be converted to the accounting entry currency.
	Account Not Specified: The account was undefined, and the amounts cannot be distributed.
	IU Processor Error: The centralized processor encountered an error. Review the accounting entries, correct any errors, and click the Update Accounting button to regenerate accounting.
Requires Review	If a check mark appears in this check box and it is unavailable for selection, this indicates that the Review Required check box was already selected on the Template page on which this was based.

Integration Status   Displays the status of the integration between Treasury and JD Edwards
                                  General Accounting. This field appears only if the integration is enabled on
                                  the Installation Options - Treasury page. Values are:

- *Pending:* The entry is ready to be sent to the Integration Broker for
  transmission to JD Edwards General Accounting.

- *Sent:*The entry has been sent to the Integration Broker.

- *Received:* The accounting entries have been loaded into the JD Edwards
  staging table.

- *Loaded:* The accounting entries have been loaded into the JD Edwards
  application tables.

- *Posted:* The accounting entries have been posted to JD Edwards
  General Accounting.

- *Error:* Indicates that the accounting entry contains erroneous data or an
  error occurred during the data transmission process and must be resent.

Note. If an entry must be resent, the integration status can be changed to
Pending unless the integration status is already displayed as *Posted.*

See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting
Installation Options for PeopleSoft Applications," Defining Treasury
Installation Options.

See *JD Edwards Application Integrations with PeopleSoft Applications,
"Using the PeopleSoft Treasury with JD Edwards General Accounting
Integration"*

Accounting Entries

Line   Displays the line number of the automated accounting process.

Error	Displays this column and a *X* link next to the lines with ChartField combination editing errors. Click the *X* link to access an Accounting Entries secondary page, which contains a Line Errors grid that has these fields:

- Line # identifies the accounting entry transaction line number.

  You can click a line number for an error and the system returns you to the specific line containing the error. You can correct the error and click the Update Accounting button on the Accounting Entries page to run the centralized interunit processor again.

- Message Set Number identifies the message set to which the error message belongs.

- Message Number identifies the specific number of the error message within the message set.

- Message Text describes information about the error.

Note. The Errors column only appears in the Accounting Entries page when there is a ChartField combination editing error. A ChartField combination error does not stop the Accounting Entries creation process (ACCOUNTING_BUILD). You can review and fix the errors after the process has finished.

GL Unit	Displays the associated General Ledger unit.
🖳	Click the Exchange Rate Detail button to view currency exchange rate information.
Base Amount	Displays the GL BU (General Ledger business unit) amount in the base system currency.
IU Anchor (interunit anchor)	Specify one line of the template as the anchor. This is a required field, because the centralized processor uses it to generate interunit entries.
Update Accounting	If you edit any of the information in the Accounting Entries group box, click this button to run the centralized interunit processor.

Note. If you are editing information only in the page header (Status field or Requires Review check box), do not click the Update Accounting button.

VAT (value-added tax)	Appears for VAT-applicable accounting entries. Click the link to access the Treasury VAT Information page.

ChartFields Tab

Select the ChartFields tab.

Chartfields tab - Accounting Entries page

| **Stat** (statistic) | If a statistics code is set for this accounting line on the template, that code appears here. You can edit this field. Select a statistics code—the associated unit of measure (UOM) appears for the selected code. You must also enter a statistic amount with which to measure the statistic. |

Important! If a ChartField combination editing error occurs, an Errors column will appear after the Line # column. An *X* link will appear next to an transaction line with a ChartField combination error. You click the *X* link to access an Accounting Entries secondary page, which contains a grid that describes the error message for each transaction. You can click on a transactions Line # link and access the accounting transaction with the ChartField combination error, and fix the problem. See the Accounting Entries subtopic in this section for additional details.

See *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Defining and Using ChartFields," ChartField Values.

Additional Details Tab

Select the Additional Details tab.

Additional Details tab - Accounting Entries page

| **Line Source** | Displays either *Treasury* for accounting lines that are generated by the treasury accounting program, or *System IU* for accounting lines that are generated by the centralized processor. |

Journal Tab

Select the Journal tab.

Journal tab - Accounting Entries page

Combo Status	Indicates whether the ChartField combination that the system built based on the accounting template is *Valid* or *Invalid.*
GL Status (General Ledger status)	Provides information about the posting status of the entry. Possible values include:

- *Distributed:* Distributed to a General Ledger journal.

- *Hold:* An error condition exists, the entry must be corrected before Journal Generator can process it, or the entry requires review.

- *None:* The entry has been created without errors, but has not been processed by the Journal Generator process.

Ledger Group	Indicates the general ledger group that is associated with the General Ledger Unit on the accounting line.
Ledger	Indicates the general ledger that is associated with the General Ledger Unit on the account line.

See Also

Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Establishing Accounting Templates, page 225

Chapter 13, "Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management," Reviewing VAT Accounting Entries, page 271

Creating Ad Hoc Accounting Entries

Access the Accounting Entries page.

The Source Code, Source ID, Event, and Accounting Template fields are optional.

- If you complete the Source Code, Source ID, and Event fields, the system can create a link between the manual and the automated accounting results.

- If you enter entries manually on a recurring basis, you can create and use an accounting template to minimize the data entry process for these entries. Any template that you create appears in the Accounting Template field. When you select an accounting template for this ad hoc entry, the system automatically populates the accounting lines with the template data.

To create ad hoc accounting entries:

1. Enter the business unit and optionally, an accounting ID. Click Add.

2. Select an accounting event from the following values:

- *(none)*

- *AOCI Adjustment*

- *AOCI Reclassify*

- *Amortize Adj of Carrying*

- *Barrier Rebate Payment*

- *Commodity Cash Difference*

- *Commodity Settlement*

- *Deal Booking*

- *Deal Maturity*

- *Derecognize Firm Commitment*

- *Discount Accrual*

- *Fair Value Hedged Item G/L*

- *Fee Accrual*

- *Firm Commitment to Carrying*

- *Forward Points Accrual*

- *Generic Cash Flow*

- *Initial Payment*

- *Interest Accrual*

- *Interim Principal Payment*

- *Mark to Market*

- *Maturity Payment*

- *Option Cash Difference*

- *Option Exercise*

- *Option Premium Accrual*

- *Periodic Payment*

- *Premium Payment*

- *Sell / Buyback*

- *Transaction Fee*

- *Will Not Occur - AOCI Reclassify*

3. Specify a source code.

4. Select a specific source ID of the selected source code.

5. Review the accounting date for accuracy.

6. Leave the default status for ad hoc entries as *Provisional.* Do not change this setting.

7. The Require Review check box is automatically selected for ad hoc entries. You cannot deselect this
    check box.

8. (Optional) Enter a description.

9. Select an accounting template.

10. Enter at least one debit and one credit line to balance the entry, and select one line as the IU anchor.

11. Enter an account and any other ChartFields for each line.

12. Select *TR_ENTRIES* for the journal template.

13. Click Update Accounting to run the centralized processor function, which creates any necessary offset
    entry lines and saves the manual accounting entry.

If the debits and credits do not balance, you receive an error message and the accounting entry is not saved.
Make the necessary corrections, and then save the page.

Note. When the Journal Generator processes the entry, the distribution status changes from *None* to
Distributed, and no further changes can be made.

See Also

Reviewing and Approving Accounting Entries

Access the View/Approve Entries page (Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, View/Approve Entries).

View/Approve Accounting Entries page

Status   Initially displays the status of accounting entries that are displayed in the
                                    Accounting Entries grid. Values are:

- *Error:* Accounting entries are in error and must be corrected before they
  can be posted to the general ledger. Possible causes of errors include
  unbalanced entries, currency exchange rate cannot be found, accounting
  template cannot be found, interunit errors, and so forth. Error status can
  be set only by the Automated Accounting process.

- *Needs Correction:* Accounting entries are in error. Needs Correction
  status can only be set manually.

- *Provisional:* Accounting entries passed system verifications, but require
  visual inspection. You can review the entry and save it with a new
  status of *Final* or *Needs Correction.*

- *Final:* Accounting entries are ready to be posted to the general ledger.

Note. Use PeopleSoft Security functionality to identify which users have access and approval privileges to
provisional accounting entries. You can define permission lists and accessible pages for a specific userID.

See Also

PeopleTools PeopleBook: Security Administration

Viewing the Accounting Summary

Access the Accounting Summary page (Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Summary).

Acctg Date (accounting date)	Displays the creation date of the accounting transaction.
Status	Select *Error,Final,* or *Provisional.*
Line	Click a link to access the Accounting Entries page for that event.
Event ID	Click to navigate back to the source transaction.

Reviewing Accounting Information

You can inquire on various aspects of your accounting activity. This section lists common elements used in this section and lists the pages used to review accounting information.

Common Elements Used in This Section

Event ID	Displays the source identifier mapped by the originating source transaction.
Status	Select *Accruing,Deactiva'd* (deactivated), *Error,In Process,Not Proc* (not processed), or *Processed.*
Template	Displays the associated accounting template. For events that have not been processed yet, or are only partially accrued, you can modify the template.
	However, for BSP and Fee accounting events, if VAT is associated with the source transaction, you cannot change the template. You must adjust VAT charges at the source transaction level—this ensures that the VAT accounting is kept in synchronicity in the system.
02	Click to access a specific Accounting Template page.

Pages Used to Review Accounting Information

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Accounting Events	TRA_EVENT_CAL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Events, Accounting Events	View accounting events generated from deals, facility fees, and bank transfers.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Bank Statement Processing Accounting (BSP)	TRA_EVENT_CAL_2	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Events Select the BSP Accounting Events tab.	View accounting events generated from bank statement processing.
Accounting Summary	TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Summary	View line by line accounting entries. You can retrieve information according to ad hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting.
TR Journal Drill	TR_DRILL_PNL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Journal Drill	View accounting entries and associated General Ledger journal data. A link to the General Ledger Journal page enables you to view the journal in greater detail.

Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure

This section provides an overview of the Fiscal Period Summary page, lists prerequisites, and discusses how to maintain fiscal period closure functionality.

Understanding the Fiscal Period Summary Page

The Fiscal Period Summary page enables you (or those users with end-of-period accounting responsibilities) to manage your fiscal period close process and the integrity of closed fiscal periods. When you close a fiscal period, system processes prevent users from running Treasury Management accounting processes for that period. This helps ensure accurate end-of-period reporting and analytical results, because any additional accounting for the period is transferred to and handled by the next accounting cycle. This type of fiscal period close is considered a *soft-close* of your accounting ledger, because the closure occurs only in the Treasury Management product, not the General Ledger product.

If another user (such as an accounting clerk) attempts to run accounting on entries of the closed fiscal period, the system will not run the accounting request. Functionality on the Automated Accounting and the Process Scheduler pages prevents the process request from occurring.

When you close or reset an entry or entries in a series of entries, the system enforces closing or resetting the entries in a certain logical order. This is to maintain the integrity of your Treasury Management accounting entries. You can also reset (open) any fiscal period that may have been closed in error. The system tracks and displays your most recent action for each fiscal period row on the Audit Detail page, providing an activity log.

In addition, individual business units can maintain their own Treasury Management close cycle calendars, independent of the close cycle performed for the general ledger. This means that one of your Treasury business units can close using a weekly calendar, while another Treasury business unit can close using a monthly calendar.

Prerequisites

Before configuring the Fiscal Period Accounting Summary page:

- Confirm that only those users who need access to this page have access permission, as defined in the permission lists associated with their user profile.

- Verify that the Treasury business units that you will use in this page are defined with a calendar ID on the Treasury Options page (BUS_UNIT_OPT_TR).

See Also

PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals 9.1 PeopleBook, "Defining Accounting Calendars," Defining Business Calendars

Chapter 2, "Defining Cash Management Processing Options," Defining Treasury Business Unit Options, page 10

PeopleTools PeopleBook: Security Administration

Page Used to Maintain Fiscal Period Closure

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Fiscal Period Summary	TR_FISCPRD_CLS	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Fiscal Period Summary	Close or *lock down* the accounting for a specified fiscal period, in preparation for end-of-period financial-report generation and analysis. This prevents other users from rerunning Treasury Management accounting processes for the closed fiscal period. You can also reset a fiscal period that has been closed in error.

Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure

Access the Fiscal Period Summary page (Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Fiscal Period Summary).

When you add rows to existing fiscal period information, the system automatically populates the Fiscal Year and Period fields with the next chronological period.

Note. Rows must be closed in ascending entry order, from first entered row to last entered row. For example, if you want to close Fiscal Year 2002, Period 2, you must first close Fiscal Year 2002, Period 1. Conversely, rows must be reset in descending entry order. In the previous example, you need to reset (or open) Fiscal Year 2002, Period 2, before you can reset Fiscal Year 2002, Period 1.

To close a fiscal period:

1. Enter the business unit and a calendar ID. Click Add.

2. Select a fiscal year.

3. Select an accounting period.

4. If you want to close this fiscal period, select the Close Acctg (close accounting) check box.

To reset a closed fiscal period:

1. Click Reset. The system enables theFiscal Year and Period fields, and automatically deselects the Close Acctg (close accounting) check box.

2. In Reset Reason, overwrite any existing text with the reason for the fiscal period reset.

The Audit Detail page lists audit information for each row.

Create Dttm (creation date and time)	Indicates the entry creation date and time.
Last Dttm (last changed by date and time)	Indicates the most recent edit date and time of the entry.
Reset Dttm (reset date and time)	Indicates the most recent reset date and time of the entry.

Chapter 13

Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management

This chapter provides an overview of processing value-added tax (VAT) in Treasury Management, provides the prerequisite tasks to set up and process VAT, and discusses how to:

* Set up VAT for Treasury Management.

* Edit VAT External Transaction details.

* Create VAT transactions for fees.

* Create VAT transactions using Automatic Reconciliation.

* Manage VAT accounting.

* Process final Treasury Management VAT transactions.

Understanding VAT Processing in Treasury Management

The VAT functionality in Treasury Management enables you to automatically process VAT accounting entries for VAT applicable transactions. Your use of VAT in Treasury Management deals in large part with setting defaults and applying these at the business unit, bank, bank branch, and accounting template levels. The objective is to calculate and create a variety of VAT accounting entries to record not only the tax, but also simultaneously record the recoverable, nonrecoverable, and rebate portions of the VAT at the accounting line level.

For PeopleSoft applications, primarily all of the VAT calculation values are derived from the VAT global defaulting architecture. The VAT defaulting architecture uses VAT Drivers, which are certain information elements on a VAT transaction that determine or "drive" the VAT processing for that transaction. (See the section Treasury Management VAT Drivers Table in this chapter for a list of Treasury specific VAT drivers.) To establish a VAT defaulting hierarchy, you must first define the overall VAT environment for your system, and then define Treasury Management VAT driver defaults on the global setup pages. For Treasury Management VAT processing, these global setup pages are accessed from the Bank Information, Bank Branch Information, Accounting Templates, and Treasury Options pages.

Treasury Management transaction sources affected by VAT are fees and interest sources. You generate or enter these transactions on the External Transactions - Treasury VAT Processing page or the Enter Fees (Fee Generator) page. When force reconciling transactions in the Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions (Bank Statement Processing) page, VAT transactions are created, where applicable, as the balancing external transaction is created (likewise, in the Bank Statement Accounting process, VAT transactions are created for any applicable external transaction created).

Though VAT is applicable to both goods and services, Treasury Management records VAT only on service transactions. As such, the Physical Nature field shown on certain pages always displays the value *Services.*

Once the setup, transactional, and accounting information is in the system, you can also run inquiries and reports on your VAT information.

As shown in the illustration, the four Treasury Management setup pages derive VAT calculation values from the primary default architecture. These VAT values are then used by the system when calculating VAT for Treasury Management accounting entries.

Important! Refer to the following documentation before establishing the primary VAT defaulting hierarchy for your system and setting up VAT for calculating Treasury Management transactions.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT."

Here's how to work with VAT in Treasury Management, from start to finish:

1. Define all VAT setup information, both on general system and Treasury Management specific pages.

2. Create VAT entries on either the External Transactions or Fee Generator pages (or automatically through the Automatic Reconciliation Exception page or the Bank Statement Accounting process).

3. Process VAT accounting through the Automated Accounting page.

4. View VAT information on VAT Accounting Summary or VAT Inquiry pages.

5. Process VAT transactions through the system using the VAT Transaction Loader page.

6. Create VAT reports.

Prerequisites

You need to establish VAT processing options in both your PeopleSoft system and in General Ledger.

See Also

PeopleSoft General Ledger 9.1 PeopleBook, "Processing Value-Added Tax Transactions in General Ledger"

Setting Up VAT for Treasury Management

Alhough the Treasury VAT Options and VAT Defaults links display on the Treasury VAT setup pages (the VAT Defaults link on the Bank Information, Bank Branch Information, and Accounting Template pages; both links on the Treasury Options page), you can access the Treasury VAT Options and VAT Defaults pages only when the selected business unit is VAT-enabled.

This section discusses how to:

1. Define Treasury business unit VAT processing defaults.

2. Define bank VAT processing defaults.

3. Define bank branch VAT processing defaults.

4. Define Treasury accounting template VAT processing defaults.

Prerequisites

Before specifying Treasury Management VAT options for a treasury management business unit, you must enable VAT for that business unit. A treasury management business unit is VAT-enabled after you link the general ledger business unit representing the treasury business unit to a VAT Entity.

See Also

PeopleSoft General Ledger 9.1 PeopleBook, "Processing Value-Added Tax Transactions in General Ledger"

PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook, "Working with VAT"

Pages Used to Set Up VAT for Treasury Management

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Treasury VAT Options	TRV_BU_UNIT_OPT_TR	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options Click Treasury VAT Options on the Treasury Options page.	Define specific VAT processing options for a Treasury business unit. **Note.** The Treasury VAT Options link is enabled only if the General Ledger business unit representing the Treasury business unit is linked to a VAT Entity. See *PeopleSoft General Ledger 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Processing Value-Added Tax Transactions in General Ledger."

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
VAT Defaults Setup (for Treasury business units)	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options Click VAT Defaults on the Treasury Options page.	Specify default VAT options for a Treasury business unit. **Note.** The VAT Defaults link on the Treasury Options page is enabled only if the General Ledger business unit representing the Treasury business unit is linked to a VAT entity. See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT," Establishing VAT Defaults.
VAT Defaults Setup (for banks)	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Banking, Banks and Branches, Bank Information Click VAT Defaults on the Bank Information page.	Specify VAT default options at the bank level. See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Banks," Defining Bank Information.
Bank Branch Information	BANK_BRNCHPNL	Banking, Banks and Branches, Bank Branch Information	Set up the bank branch and define VAT registration options. See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Setting Up Banks," Defining Bank Branches.
VAT Defaults Setup (for bank branches)	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Banking, Banks and Branches, Bank Branch Information Click VAT Defaults on the Bank Branch Information page.	Specify default VAT information for a bank branch. See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT," Establishing VAT Defaults.
Template	TRA_TMPL_DETL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates	Define general accounting template and template line information, including VAT template line information. See Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Entering Accounting Template Information, page 226.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
VAT Defaults Setup (for accounting templates)	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates Click VAT Defaults on the Template page.	Define VAT default processing options for a Treasury Management accounting template. **Note.** The Treasury VAT Defaults link is enabled only for BSP and Fee Source type accounting templates.

Defining Treasury Business Unit VAT Options

Access the VAT Options page (Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options, then click Treasury VAT Options on the Treasury Options page).

Treasury - VAT Options page

VAT Edit Msgs (VAT edit messages) — VAT edit messages are used to indicate if VAT tolerance messages are errors, warnings, or not displayed. This is a business unit-only default and applies directly to a transaction.

- *Error Message:* A message displays, and you must correct the tolerance error to proceed with a transaction.

- *Warning:* A message displays indicating a transaction exceeds tolerance settings.

- *None:* No message displays.

Prorate Non-Recoverable VAT — Select this check box to record non-recoverable VAT amounts to an expense account.

Allocate Non-Recoverable VAT — Select this check box to allocate non-recoverable VAT using ChartField Inheritance logic.

Note. You can select either to allocate or prorate nonrecoverable VAT transactions, but you cannot select both check boxes.

Editing VAT External Transaction Details

This section discusses how to edit VAT external transaction details.

Editing VAT on Treasury External Transactions

Using the External Transactions page, you can add VAT-applicable external transactions, and specify VAT options for those transactions on the Treasury VAT Processing page. To access this page, you must complete the following fields on the External Transactions page:

• Bank ID

• Account # (account number)

• Transaction amount

• Transaction code

• Transaction date

• Transaction reference ID

• Accounting template ID

See *PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Reconciling Statements," Entering External Transactions.

When you click the VAT link, the system verifies that the business unit is VAT enabled, the Tran Code (transaction code) is *Fee,* and a VAT applicable accounting template is selected. (The system determines the default business unit and bank branch information for VAT by the specified bank account number, and uses this information to populate the Business Unit field on the External Transactions page.) The Treasury VAT Processing page displays only if these conditions are met.

The Effects of Changing VAT Defaults

The Treasury VAT Processing page displays VAT Defaults in descending order of impact. When you change multiple VAT defaults and click the Adjust Affected VAT Defaults button, specific fields will or will not be adjusted. You should work top-down, clicking Adjust Affected VAT Defaults at the appropriate time(s) to avoid adjustments to VAT Defaults that you overrode but not did not memorize.

For example, if you override Vendor Registration Country and click Adjust Affected VAT Defaults, the system adjusts all VAT Defaults except Vendor Registration Country and Vendor Registration ID. Then you override Place of Supply Driver and click Adjust Affected VAT Defaults again. The system adjusts all VAT Defaults except Service Type, Place of Supply Driver, Vendor Registration Country, and Vendor Registration ID.

Pages Used to Edit VAT External Transaction Details

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
External Transactions	BNK_RCN_TRAN_UPDT	Banking, Reconcile Statements, External Transactions	Enter external transaction information and VAT information
Treasury VAT Processing	TRV_VAT_TRAN_SEC	Click the VATlink on the Transactions Detail tab of the External Transactions page.	Specify VAT transaction details for an external transaction.

Editing VAT External Transaction Details

Access the Treasury VAT Processing page (click the VAT link on the Transactions Detail tab of the External Transactions page).

Treasury VAT Processing

Return to External Transactions page

Bank ID:	Account #:	Reference:	Tran Date:	Accounting Template ID:
00001	00000000001	EXT013	11/15/2000	BSP-BANKFEEVAT

VAT Entity:
FRA01V

[Expand All Sections]   [Collapse All Sections]

▼ Physical Nature

Physical Nature: Services

▼ VAT Locations

Bank Location Country: FRA

VAT Defaults

▼ VAT Registrations

Reporting Country:	FRA 🔍	Defaulting State:	🔍
Bank Registration Country:	FRA 🔍	Bank Registration ID:	FR 57391338076
Exception Type:	▼	Certificate ID:	

▼ VAT Controls

Calculation Type:	Inclusive ▼	☑ Prorate Non-Recoverable
Rounding Rule:	Nat Rnd ▼	☐ Allocate Non-Recoverable
Use Type:	COMM 🔍	
Recovery Source:	Automatic	
Rebate Source:	Automatic	

Treasury VAT Processing page (1 of 2)

Treasury VAT Processing page (2 of 2)

Note. You can edit fields on this page only if the accounting entry has not been reconciled.

Expanding and Collapsing Sections

To manage your VAT data more efficiently, you can expand and collapse sections on this VAT page.

Expand All Sections	Click the expand button to scroll to and access every section on the page. You can also expand one or more sections by clicking the arrow next to the section's name.
Collapse All Sections	Click to collapse all sections displaying only the header information. If you expand one or more sections, you can click the arrow next to the section's name to collapse the section.

Drivers

Physical Nature   Displays *Services,* as all Treasury VAT processing is only performed on
                             services.

Bank Location Country   Displays the country in which the bank is located. The default value is the
                             country that you specified for the bank branch location. This is analogous to
                             the Ship From country.

Registrations

Reporting Country   Displays the VAT registration country of the beneficiary *(buyer)* of the
                             service. The VAT defaulting routine retrieves the country value from the
                             VAT entity, as either the service country, the business unit location country,
                             or the country set as the home country.

Defaulting State   Specify a state within the Reporting Country. If the Reporting Country
                             tracks VAT by state, then VAT default values may be defined at the state
                             level.

Bank Registration Country Displays the VAT registration country of the provider *(seller)* of the
                             service—the registration country of the bank branch. The default value
                             comes from the bank branch.

Bank Registration ID   Displays both the country code and VAT registration number.

                             The two-character country code for the VAT registration country is display
                             only. In addition to the three-character code (for example, Bank's Country)
                             this two-character code is often required as part of the actual registration
                             ID.

                             The system derives the default VAT registration ID number from the
                             applicable bank branch. You can override this number. However,
                             PeopleCode validation routines ensure the number is valid according to
                             country-specific checksum algorithms.

Exception Type   Select from the following:

                             • *Exonerated:* Select if the VAT entity is permanently excused from
                               paying VAT.

                             • *None:*

                             • *Suspended:* Select if the VAT entity is temporarily excused from paying
                               VAT.

Certificate ID   Enter the VAT certificate ID number issued by certain governments to
                             show proof of an exception.

VAT Controls

Calculation Type	Indicates whether the amount that you enter on a transaction is *Inclusive* (default value) of the VAT or *Exclusive.* If *Exclusive* is selected, the system calculates the VAT charge and adds it to the transaction amount. However, if the calculation type is *Exclusive,* and if you change the VAT amount on the detail transaction, the system changes the transaction amount according to the calculation type. The system retrieves the field value using the VAT default hierarchy, but you can override it.

Rounding Rule Specify the rule you want to use:

- *Nat Rnd* (natural rounding): Amounts are rounded normally (up or down) to the precision specified for the currency code. For example, for a currency defined with two decimal places, 157.4659 would round up to 157.47, but 157.4649 would round down to 157.46.

- *Up*: Rounds up and limits the rounding precision to one additional decimal place. For example, for a currency defined with two decimal places, 157.4610 would round up to 157.47, but 157.4609 rounds to 157.46.

- *Down*: Rounds down.

The VAT rounding rule you specify affects the currency numbers stored in the database as well as how currency numbers print on the reports. The VAT rounding rule affects only VAT amounts.

Allocate Non-Recoverable VAT	If selected, indicates that the system allocates nonrecoverable VAT using ChartField Inheritance logic.
Prorate Non-Recoverable VAT	If selected, indicates that the system records nonrecoverable VAT to an expense account.
Use Type	Defaults from the VAT defaulting hierarchy. You can override the values in this field. The field is mandatory when Applicability is set to *Taxable.*

Recovery Source Options specified on the VAT Default Setup page at the business unit level determine if you can edit this field.

- If the displayed value is *Automatic,* this VAT percentage is automatically calculated by the system. You can not override this value.

- If *Manual,* you can edit the Recovery Percent field in the Calculations group box.

Rebate Source	Options specified on the VAT Default Setup page at the business unit level determine if you can edit this field.

- If the displayed value is *Automatic,* this VAT percentage is automatically calculated by the system. You can not override this value.

- If *Manual,* you can edit the Rebate Percent field in the Calculations group box.

VAT Treatments

Place of Supply Country	Displays the country that is the supplier of record for the service.
State	Select a state within the defined Place of Supply Country. If the Place of Supply Country tracks VAT by state, then VAT default values may be defined at the state level.
Treatment	VAT treatment determines which default values should be applied, and also controls, to some extent, the availability of some VAT-related fields.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT," VAT Defaults.

Select from the following:

- *Domestic Service Purchase*

- *EU Service Purchase*

- *Outside Scope*

- *Self-Assess Service Import*

VAT Details

Applicability	Displays a default value derived from the accounting template. You can override the values in this field.
	See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT," Taxable Status and VAT Rates.

- *Exempt*

- *Exonerated*

- *N/A*

- *Outside*

- *Suspend*

- *Taxable*

- *VAT Only*

VAT Code	Displays the default value derived from the appropriate VAT defaulting hierarchy depending on the defined Treatment and/or defined Applicability. You can override the values in this field. When you click the Recalculate button, the system uses the VAT defaulting hierarchy to update fields in the Calculations group box.
Record Output	The default comes from the accounting template. You can edit this field.
	Select this option to record and report one or more types of output VAT (Output, Output Intermediate, Output for Purchases) on transactions containing this VAT driver value.
Transaction Type	Displays the assigned VAT transaction type. VAT transaction types classify and categorize transactions at a more detailed level for both VAT reporting and accounting.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT," VAT Reporting and Accounting.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT," Reviewing VAT Field Descriptions by VAT Driver.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT," Understanding VAT Transaction Type Setup.

Adjust or Reset VAT Defaults

Adjusting or resetting VAT defaults will only affect the fields within this VAT Defaults group box:

- Adjust Affected VAT Defaults

  If you changed any fields on this page, these changes may impact VAT defaults on this page. For accuracy and consistency, click this button if you want the system to adjust the VAT defaults that are affected by your changes. All changes you have made to VAT Defaults on this page that affect other VAT Defaults on this page will be retained.

  Click the i (information) button to list the fields that will be adjusted.

  Note. PeopleSoft recommends that you always click the Adjust Affected VAT Defaults button after changing any defaults on the VAT page.

- Levels

  The levels affected when you click the Reset All VAT Defaults button may be different depending the application you are working with and the type of VAT page you are working on.

  Select the level:

  - *All lower levels*

    Select this field value to reset all VAT defaults at lower levels for this page.

    Note. Reset completely redetermines the VAT defaults. This does not necessarily mean they will be reset to their original values. For example, the user may not have changed any VAT default values, but if a VAT driver field was changed, pressing Reset will redetermine all defaults based on the new driver value.

  - *This and all lower levels*

    Select this field value to reset all VAT defaults on this VAT page and at any lower levels of this page.

  - *This level only*

    Select this field value to reset all VAT defaults on this VAT page.

- Reset All VAT Defaults

  Click this button if you want the system to reset the VAT defaults based the Levels value you selected. Any changes you have previously made to VAT defaults will be lost.

VAT Calculations

Except for Entered Amount, all fields in this section are display only and the Recalculate function populates them.

Basis Amount	Displays the VAT basis amount in transaction currency.
Basis Amount Base	Displays the VAT basis amount in the base currency.
Tax Rate	Displays the VAT tax rate.
Calculated Amount	Displays the calculated VAT amount in the transaction currency.

Calculated Amount Base	Displays the calculated VAT amount in base currency. The system uses the transaction currency for the entered VAT amount, based on the exchange rate that is applicable to the transaction.
Override VAT Amount	Enter the override amount to recalculate the VAT amount. This amount displays in the transaction currency.
Override VAT Amount	Displays the recalculated override VAT amount in the base currency.
Recorded Amount	Displays the transaction currency amount stored in the system VAT tables.
Recorded Amount Base	Displays the base currency amount stored in the system VAT tables.
Recovery Percent	Displays a system-calculated value, based on the selected Use Type.
Rebate Percent	Displays a system-calculated value, based on the selected VAT Use Type.
Recovery Amount	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the transaction currency.
Recovery Amount Base	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the base currency
Rebate Amount	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the transaction currency.
Rebate Amount Base	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the base currency.

See *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Working with VAT," VAT Recoverability.

Creating VAT Transactions for Fees

The Enter Fees page generates various types of fees, as opposed to the External Transactions page, which only generates bank statement fees. To generate VAT, you first define VAT options for specific fee codes. When you create fee entries with the VAT-enabled fee codes, the system automatically generates VAT accounting and displays it on the fee entry's Treasury VAT Processing page.

This section discusses how to:

1. Define VAT-applicable fee codes.

2. Enter fees.

3. View VAT options for a fee entry.

Pages Used to Create VAT Transactions for Fees

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Fee Codes	FA_FEE_CD_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes, Fee Codes	Set up fee codes. See Chapter 5, "Managing Fees and Account Analysis," Defining Fee Codes, page 34.
Enter Fees	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Fees, Enter Fees	Create fees for deal, facility, EFT, and letter of credit sources. See Chapter 5, "Managing Fees and Account Analysis," Creating Fee Entries, page 51.
Treasury VAT Processing	TRV_VAT_FEE_SEC	Click VAT on the Enter Fees page.	Specify VAT transaction details for a fee. This page displays only when the specified fee code is VAT applicable. This page is the same as the Treasury VAT Processing page for external transactions. See Chapter 13, "Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management," Editing VAT External Transaction Details, page 258.

Creating VAT Transactions Using Automatic Reconciliation

This section discusses creating VAT using PeopleSoft Automatic Reconciliation.

The system creates VAT automatically when you force reconcile a fee or interest through reconciliation, if the accounting template has a VAT applicable line. The force reconciliation function inserts transactions into the Bank Reconciliation Transaction table (BNK_RCN_TRAN) and the VAT record (TRV_VAT_TRAN). It also generates a Treasury accounting event. For VAT fees to be reconciled on the bank side and system side, you must select a statement activity type for the bank statement processing template.

Note. For VAT applicable fees to display on the Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions page, you must first process the transactions using the Automatic Reconciliation Manager page.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Reconciling Statements," Reconciling Transactions Automatically

Page Used to Create VAT Using Automatic Reconciliation

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions	BNK_RCN_VUE_UNR	Banking, Analyze Exceptions, Auto Reconciliation Exceptions	Force an automatic reconciliation to process VAT-applicable transactions.

Forcing the Reconciliation of VAT-Applicable Transactions

Access the Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions page (Banking, Analyze Exceptions, Auto Reconciliation Exceptions).

Note. For VAT applicable fees to be created and reconciled on the Automatic Reconciliation Exception page, the VAT Treatment must be *Inclusive.* Reconciliation does not occur if the system algorithm determines the VAT Treatment is *Exclusive.* To reconcile these types of fees, you must enter them on the External Transactions page, and then use the Semi Manual Reconciliation page to complete the reconciliation.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Resolving Reconciliation Exceptions," Understanding Reconciliation Exceptions

Managing VAT Accounting

The only VAT accounting activity you need to perform is setting the VAT option on the accounting template. To enable automated VAT processing, VAT attributes and VAT amounts are recorded on a shadow table (VAT Transaction Record table, TRV_VAT_TRAN) associated with the VAT accounting lines. This process works in the background. Once you process VAT transactions through Automated Accounting process (TR_ACCTG), the system automatically generates the necessary accounting entries and VAT accounting lines based on data in the VAT Transaction Record.

This section discusses how to:

1. Process VAT entries with Automated Accounting.

2. Review VAT accounting entries.

3. Review Treasury VAT information.

Pages Used to Manage VAT Accounting

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Automated Accounting	TRA_ACCTG_REQ	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Automated Accounting	Run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for Journal Generator process (FSPGJGEN).
Accounting Summary	TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Summary	View line by line accounting events. You can retrieve information according to ad-hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting.
Accounting Entries	TRA_ACCTG_LINE_1	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries Click VAT on the Accounting Entries tab.	Review and possibly adjust automated accounting entries, or create manual accounting entries online.
Treasury VAT Information	TRV_ACCTG_LINE_VAT	Click VAT on the Accounting Entries − Accounting Entries tab.	Use the Treasury VAT Information page to view VAT information for a specific accounting line.

Processing VAT with Automated Accounting

Access the Automated Accounting page (Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Automated Accounting).

To process VAT:

1. Specify the Business Unit and Template.

2. Enter a Fiscal Year and Period, or specify an Acctg Events End Date (accounting events end date).

3. Select the Bank Stmt/Trans (bank statement/transaction), Facility Fees, Deal Fees, L/C (letter of credit), or EFT Fees check boxes.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Reconciling Statements," Reconciling Transactions Automatically

Reviewing VAT Accounting Entries

Access the Accounting Entries page (Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries).

Accounting Entries

Unit:	FRA01	Accounting ID:	0000000024	Event:	
Bank ID:	00001	Account #:	00000000001	Transaction Reference ID:	EXT018
Acctg Date:	11/15/2000	*Status:	Final	Error: None	☐ Requires Review
Description:	OFFLINE ACCOUNTING BUILD - BSP			Acctg Template:	
Doc Type:		Combo Template:	TREASURY		
Created By:		Last Changed By:			
Create Dttm:		Last Dttm:			

Summary Totals

1,175.00 DRs:	-1,175.00 CRs:	0.00 Net:

Accounting Entries   Customize | Find | | First 1-3 of 3 Last

Line Detail | Chartfields | Additional Details | Journal | Document Sequencing

Line	GL Unit	Amount	Currency	Exchg Rate	Exch Rt Dtl	Base Amount	Base Currency	IU Anchor			
1	FRA01	-1,175.00	FRF	1.00000000		-1,175.00	FRF	☐		+	−
2	FRA01	1,000.00	FRF	1.00000000		1,000.00	FRF	☐	VAT	+	−
3	FRA01	175.00	FRF	1.00000000		175.00	FRF	☐	VAT	+	−

Update Accounting   Attachments (0)

Line Detail tab - Treasury Accounting Entries page

When the Automated Accounting process is complete, you can review the created accounting entries and VAT transactions. The VAT link displays on the Accounting Entries page when the accounting line has VAT information.

Line   As the example above shows, the Automated Accounting process created three accounting entries. Line *3* is the VAT amount. Click a Line link to access the Accounting Entries page and review the VAT transaction detail.

Note. The number of VAT accounting lines created varies, depending on the accounting scenario.

Note. The number and types of accounting entries depends on the VAT Treatment and whether or not any of the VAT is recoverable or subject to rebate.

The system obtains the ChartFields used to create each accounting entry from the VAT accounting template (which is defined by VAT Code, VAT Transaction Type, and optionally the General Ledger business unit). Additionally, for nonrecoverable VAT, the ChartFields used are also dependent upon whether or not the nonrecoverable amount is being prorated or allocated to the associated expense account. If the nonrecoverable amount is not prorated or allocated to the associated expense account, the system obtains the non-account ChartFields from the VAT accounting template.

In situations when the VAT accounting entries have two different business units—one for the Transaction General Ledger business unit (Unit field in the Accounting Entries page header), and one for the Distribution General Ledger business unit (GL Unit field in Accounting Entries - Line Detail tab), you can direct the system to inherit either business unit. You specify this option during implementation on the VAT Business Unit Option page (VAT_BU_OPT). During the Automated Accounting process, if the system registers two different business units in use, it refers to the options specified on this page. The system then enters the correct inherited business unit into the GL Unit field of each entered distribution line of the system generated VAT accounting entries.

Note. Accounting entries that the Automated Accounting process creates and distributes to General Ledger are display only and you *cannot* adjust them on this page. You must adjust VAT accounting through the General Ledger journal.

See Also

Chapter 12, "Managing Treasury Accounting," Processing Automated Accounting, page 235

PeopleSoft General Ledger 9.1 PeopleBook, "Making General Ledger Journal Entries"

PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook, "Working with VAT"

Reviewing Treasury VAT Information

Access the Treasury VAT Information page (Click VAT on the Accounting Entries − Accounting Entries tab).

Treasury VAT Information

Unit: FRA01	Accounting ID:	0000000024	Line: 2

VAT Applicability:	Taxable	☑ Record Input VAT		☐ Record Output VAT	
VAT Code:	NL1	VAT Transaction Type:	FASD	Calculation Type:	Inclusive
VAT Declaration Date:	11/15/2000	Foreign Currency Code:	FRF	Currency Code:	FRF
Accounting Entry Type:	VI	Expense Non-Recov VAT:	Y	Distribution Status:	None
Physical Nature:	Services				

VAT Amounts

VAT Rate:	17.5000		
VAT Amount:	175.00	Entered VAT Amount:	0.00
VAT Base Amount:	175.00	Entered VAT Base Amount:	0.00
VAT Basis Amount:	1,000.00	VAT Calculated Amount:	175.00
VAT Basis Base Amount:	1,000.00	VAT Calculated Base Amount:	175.00
VAT Recovery Amount:	175.00	VAT Rebate Amount:	0.00
VAT Recovery Base Amount:	175.00	VAT Rebate Base Amount:	0.00

Treasury VAT Information page

Note. Treasury Management VAT functionality is currently limited to VAT on bank fees and other fees, recording only input VAT or the combination of input and output VAT. As such, it is unlikely that you will be using either the *VO* or *VONT* types for your VAT transactions.

VAT Applicability	Displays the default value derived from the accounting template.
Record Input VAT	This field is based on the defined VAT treatment. This check box is selected by default.
Record Output VAT	This check box is selected by default if the defined VAT treatment is *EU Services Purchases* or *Self-Assessed Services Imports.*
VAT Code	Displays the default value derived from the appropriate VAT defaulting hierarchy—this is also dependent on the VAT Treatment and/or VAT Applicability.
VAT Transaction Type	Displays the default value derived from the appropriate VAT defaulting hierarchy—this is also dependent on the VAT Treatment and/or VAT Applicability.
VAT Calculation Type	Displays *Inclusive* or *Exclusive.*
VAT Declaration Date	Displays the default value derived from the transaction date.

Accounting Entry Type	Displays the VAT accounting entry type.
	VAT distribution account types define the different types of VAT accounting entries that may be required. Treasury Management only uses the following VAT distribution account types:

- *VI:* VAT Input

- *VIR:* VAT Input Recoverable

- *VIN:* VAT Input Non-Recoverable

- *VIB:* VAT Input Rebate

- *VINT:* VAT Input Non-Taxable

- *VOP:* VAT Output on Purchase

- *VO:* VAT Output

- *VONT:* VAT Output Non-Taxable.

Expense Non-Recov VAT (expense nonrecoverable VAT)	Displays one of the following values:

- *Y* (yes): Indicates the system expenses nonrecoverable VAT to the expense account.

- *N* (no): Indicates the system separates nonrecoverable VAT.

Distribution Status	Indicates if the transaction has been loaded to the VAT Transaction Loader. Displays one of the following values:

- *DISTRIBUTED:* Indicates the transaction has been loaded.

- *IGNORE:* Indicates the system is not to load the transaction.

- *NOT DISTRIBUTED:* Indicates the transaction is eligible to be loaded, but has not yet been loaded.

- *UNDEFINED:* Indicates the transaction requires additional processing before the system transfers it to the loader.

VAT Rate	Displays the VAT percentage that is applied to the transaction.
VAT Amount	Displays the VAT amount in the transaction currency.
VAT Base Amount	Displays the VAT amount in the base currency.
VAT Basis Amount	Displays the VAT basis amount in transaction currency.
VAT Basis Base Amount	Displays the VAT basis amount in the base currency.
VAT Recovery Amount	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the transaction currency.
VAT Recovery Base Amount	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the base currency.

Entered VAT Amount	The default value is zero *(0).* If either the VAT calculation type is *Inclusive,* or both Record Input VAT and Record Output VAT check boxes are selected, this field is set to zero and unavailable. You can override this default value by selecting *Exclusive* for the calculation type.
	This is the actual VAT amount in transaction currency that prints on the external document. If it is not equal to the calculated VAT amount (and not equal to zero), tolerance checking is performed.
Entered VAT Base Amount	Displays the entered VAT amount in base currency. The system uses the transaction currency for the entered VAT amount, based on the exchange rate that is applicable to the transaction.
VAT Calculated Amount	Displays the calculated VAT amount in the transaction currency.
VAT Calculated Base Amount	Displays the calculated VAT amount in the base currency.
VAT Rebate Amount	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the transaction currency.
VAT Rebate Base Amount	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the base currency.

Note. This page is display only. Once the Automated Accounting process creates the VAT accounting entries and distributes them to General Ledger, you cannot adjust the entries on a Treasury application page. You must use the General Ledger Journal Entry page to adjust VAT accounting entries.

See Also

PeopleSoft General Ledger 9.1 PeopleBook, "Making General Ledger Journal Entries," Editing Journal Entries

PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook, "Working with VAT," VAT Environment Setup

Processing Final Treasury Management VAT Transactions

Once you have run all the individual processes to finalize the transactions, you should:

1. Run the VAT Transaction Loader process (FS_VATUPDFS) to load the VAT information into the VAT Transaction Table.

2. Run the VAT Report Extract process (VAT1001) to extract the data from the VAT Transaction Tables to reporting tables, where the data are available for final reporting to the tax authorities.

Once the VAT Report Extract process is complete, you are ready to create a variety of reports on your VAT information. We discuss this information in the *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook.*

See Also

PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook, "Working with VAT," Loading the VAT Transaction Table

PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook, "Working with VAT," Generating VAT Reports

Chapter 14

Performing In-House Banking Activities

This chapter discusses how to:

* Calculate interest accruals.

* Generate schedules.

* Generate the In-House Bank Statement report.

Prerequisites

Before you can perform in-house banking (IHB) activities, you must first:

* Set up internal banks for each business unit you intend to use to internally exchange funds.

* Define internal account information. On the Internal Account Information page you must:

    * Generate the schedule defined on Internal Account Information page (required to run interest accrual calculation process).

    * Specify both debit and credit rate index information (required to run interest accrual calculation and interest schedule generation processes).

    * Adjust the opening balances for both Service and Owner of an internal account, as needed. (The opening balances default to zero on setup.)

* Check that an accounting template that is setup for internal account interest accruals is installed.

See Also

PeopleSoft Banks Setup and Processing 9.1 PeopleBook, "Setting Up External, Internal, and Netting Accounts," Defining Internal Account Information

PeopleSoft Financial Gateway 9.1 PeopleBook, "Processing Bank Statements in Financial Gateway"

Managing In-House Banking Activities

This section discusses how to:

- Automatically calculate interest accruals using the IHB Interest Accruals (in-house banking interest accruals) Application Engine process (TR_TRINTACU).

- View activity on your internal accounts.

- Generate schedules for interest accrual.

Pages Used to Manage In-House Banking Activities

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Generate Schedules	SCHEDULE_CREATE	• Click Generate Schedule on the Internal Accounts - Account Information page. • Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Generate Schedules	Create an interest accrual schedule. The frequency of the schedule determines the frequency with which the interest is posted to the internal account balance.
Calculate Interest Accruals	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, In-House Banking, Calculate Interest Accruals	Run the IHB Interest Accruals process to calculate the amount of interest.
Internal Account Activity	BNK_INT_ACCT_BAL	Cash Management, In-House Banking, Review Internal Account Activity	View data that are related to activity on your internal accounts.

Calculating Interest Accruals

Access the Calculate Interest Accruals page (Cash Management, In-House Banking, Calculate Interest Accruals).

Calculate Interest Accruals page

| Bind Variable Name and Value/Date | In the Parameters grid is an Application Engine run control function that enables you to specify the variable for which you are setting the value. You can add records and specify as many bind variable names as are pertinent to the job. |

- *ACCT_TMPL_ID*: When you use this bind variable name, enter an accounting template in the corresponding Value field. PeopleSoft provides *INTERNAL_INTACC* as a default accounting template.

- *END_DT*: When you use this bind variable name, enter an end date in the Date field. Accounting events and cash flow entries will be created with the specified end date. The system processes and updates records only once for the end date.

Generating the In-House Bank Statement Report

This report shows balance, debit, credit, and activity information for a selected bank over a specified date range.

Page Used to Generate the In-House Bank Statement Report

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
In-House Bank Statement	RUN_TRC3005	Cash Management, In-House Banking, In-House Bank Statements	Lists transaction and interest accrual activity for a specified bank and account during a defined time frame.

Chapter 15

Using the Treasury Dashboard

This chapter presents an overview of the Treasury Dashboard and discusses how to configure and display the Treasury Dashboard.

Understanding the Treasury Dashboard

Organizations face complex challenges in controlling and streamlining financial processes in order to improve the bottom line. The lack of visibility into cash positions and daily operational tasks on the part of Treasury managers has created a need for a dashboard to efficiently manage their return on cash. The Treasury Dashboard will provide managers with a unique view of the cash position for the organization. The dashboard provides the cash position by bank or by currency, investment mix, department mix and payment by source. The Treasury Dashboard is a necessary business intelligence tool that enables managers to effectively manage cash within their organizations, saving them time and money. Dashboards streamline the work of the treasurer by providing enormous value as well as a central place to monitor the cash position, payments and investments.

The Treasury Dashboard consists of a series of components which display cash management, deal management, and operational data in summary, detail and chart formats. These components enable executives and managers to gain a clear visual concept of the financial state of the organization in order to manage and monitor spending in real time. The Treasury Dashboard consists of:

- These cash management dashboards:

    - Cash Position by Bank Dashboard

    - Cash Position by Currency Dashboard

- These deal management dashboards:

    - Investment Mix Dashboard.

    - Debt Mix Dashboard.

    - Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments Dashboard.

    - Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt Dashboard.

    - Open Foreign Exchange Contracts Dashboard.

- These operational dashboards:

    - Payments by Source Dashboard.

    - Payments by Status Dashboard.

    - Payments by Bank Dashboard.

    - Payments by Payment Method Dashboard.

    - Status of Bank Statement Loads Dashboard.

Cash Management Dashboards

The Cash Management dashboards are:

- Cash Position by Bank.

- Cash Position by Currency.

These two options are based on association of selected cash position trees and nodes. To obtain the data that you want to display, you have the flexibility to:

- Set up your banks as tree nodes.

- Set up your banks as source sets.

- Set up one tree node and use bank information as additional criteria in the calculation preferences.

You set up a configuration to determine the data that you want to review on each dashboard. You determine the date to apply to the data and whether you want to control the data that appears for cash position in a chart based on bank code, source set, or tree node. You must also select the exchange rate information to apply to the data, and select the method used to determine the position and amount. If you select tree node or source set, you have the option of indicating that you want to chart the resulting data by bank.

In Treasury Management, a position is the total financial value of a particular set of transactions that are performed on behalf of an enterprise. A cash position analyzes cash flows to determine the amount of cash that is available at a particular time. Once you configure the dashboard and save the page, you can display your organization's cash position summary and detail data in two- or three dimensional-charts based on the configuration.

Cash Position by Bank Dashboard

The Cash Position by Bank Dashboard displays the summary and detail cash position amounts for each bank defined in the cash position tree that you selected in your Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position by Bank page.

Along with grids listing the summary and detail data, you can choose to display the cash position data in a two- or three-dimensional chart.

See

Cash Position by Currency Dashboard

The Cash Position by Currency Dashboard displays the cash position summary and detail amounts based on each type of currency that you set up for each node in the cash position tree that you select on the Dashboard Configuration – Cash Position by Currency page to measure the currency exposure. Along with grids listing the summary and detail data, you can choose to display the data in a two- or three-dimensional chart.

See Chapter 6, "Defining Cash Positions," page 55.

Deal Management Dashboards

The Deal Management dashboards are:

- Investment Mix.

- Debt Mix.

- Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments.

- Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt.

- Open Foreign Exchange Contracts.

You access the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page to identify the type of data that you want to display on Deal dashboards. This configuration requires that you enter a start and end date and then select a previously defined time interval. You select the time interval and apply a previously defined calendar to this interval. You also enter the number of days that would classify an investment/debt as short term, select the currency that you want to display on each of the Deal Management dashboards, and select the exchange rate information.

Investment Mix Dashboard

The Investment Mix Dashboard is used to compare the amounts of an organization's long and short term investments based on the time interval selected and the number of days that classify an investment as short term entered when you set up the configuration for this dashboard. An organization's investments may include long and short term investment deals in various forms of securities equities, and facilities. These data are derived from investments that are set up for an organization in PeopleSoft Deal Management.

Along with grids that display detail and summary investment mix data on the Investment Mix Dashboard, you can choose to display either a two- or three-dimensional chart of these data.

Debt Mix Dashboard

The Debt Mix Dashboard is used to compare the amounts of long term and short term debt held by your organization based on the time series that you select and the number of days that you enter that qualify a debt as short term on the Dashboard Configuration – Deals page.

Along with grids that display detail and summary investment mix data on the Debt Mix Dashboard, you can choose to display either a two- or three-dimensional chart of these data.

Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments Dashboard

An investment that earns money based on a fixed interest rate means that the amount of interest earned on the investment by the organization is based on an interest rate that typically stays the same over the life of the investment. An investment that earns money based on a floating interest rate means that the amount of interest earned on the investment over the life of the investment changes periodically.

The Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments Dashboard displays the organization's investments in fixed interest rate earning investments, and floating interest rate earning investments over a specific period of time. This time period is based on a time series that you select for this dashboard on the Dashboard Configuration – Deals page.

Along with grids that display detail and summary data on the Fixed Rate versus Floating Rate Investment Dashboard, you can choose to display either a two- or three-dimensional chart of the data.

Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt

A fixed rate is an interest rate that typically stays the same over the life of the debt instrument. A floating rate is an interest rate the changes over the life of the debt instrument. The Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt Dashboard displays an organization's borrowings on fixed rate basis and floating rate basis over a specified period of time. This time period is based on a time series that you select for this dashboard on the Dashboard Configuration – Deals page.

Along with grids that display detail and summary data on the Fixed Rate versus Floating Rate Debt Dashboard, you can choose to display either a two- or three-dimensional chart of the data.

Open Foreign Exchange Contracts Dashboard

A foreign exchange contract is a commitment to buy or sell a specified amount of foreign currency on a fixed date and rate of exchange. These contracts are used usually by importers as a hedge against exchange rate inflation. The Open Foreign Exchange Contracts Dashboard displays the amount of open foreign currency exchange contract bought or sold by an organization . You can choose to display the currency amount for either buying contracts or selling contracts.

Along with grids that display detail and summary data on the Open Foreign Exchange Contracts Dashboard, you can choose to display either a two- or three-dimensional chart of the data.

See *PeopleSoft Deal Management 9.1 PeopleBook*, "Deals Capture Examples," Entering Foreign Exchange Deals Examples.

Operational Dashboards

The operational dashboards are:

• Payments by Source Dashboard.

• Payments by Status Dashboard.

• Payments by Bank Dashboard.

• Payments by Payment Method Dashboard.

• Status of Bank Statement Loads Dashboard.

The dashboards that fall under this category display total payment amounts based on a specified payment source, payment status, bank, and payment method. The last dashboard displays the status of bank statement loads.

Payments by Source Dashboard

The Payments by Source Dashboard enables you to select a business unit and specify a date or range of dates on the Dashboard Configuration - Payments by Source page and display the total amount of payments depending on whether the source of the payments in the system is AP (accounts payable), AR (accounts receivable), BPEL (BPEL source), CM (cash management), DM (deal management), or Expenses.

Along with grids that display detail and summary data on the Payments by Source Dashboard, you can choose to display either a two- or three-dimensional chart of the data.

Payments by Status Dashboard

The Payments by Status Dashboard enables you to select a business unit and specify a date or range of dates on the page and display the total amount of payments based the payment status of each payment.

Along with grids that display detail and summary data on the Payments by Status Dashboard, you can choose to display either a two- or three-dimensional chart of the data.

Payments by Bank Dashboard

The Payments by Bank Dashboard enables you to select a business unit and a date or range of dates and display the total amount of payments based on each bank affiliated with your organization.

Along with grids that display detail and summary data on the Payments by Bank Dashboard, you can choose to display either a two- or three-dimensional chart of the data.

Payments by Payment Method Dashboard

The Payments by Payment Method Dashboard enables you select a business unit and a date or range of dates and display the total amount of payments based on the payment method used such as ACH (Automated Clearing House), drafts, EFT (electronic file transfer), and wire transfer. .

Along with grids that display detail and summary data on the Payments by Payment Method Dashboard, you can choose to display either a two- or three-dimensional chart of the data.

Status of Bank Statement Loads Dashboard

The loading of bank statement information is an integral part of the reconciliation, bank statement accounting, and cash position processes. The system processes previous day statements that are used for reconciliation and accounting, current day statements for cash position worksheets, and account analysis statements for bank fee analysis. The configuration page allows you to exclude a Bank Statement Type or Bank Information.

Along with grids that display detail and summary data on the Status of Bank Statement Loads Dashboard, you can choose to display either a two- or three-dimensional chart of the data.

Configuring and Displaying Treasury Dashboards

This section discusses how to:

• Configure the cash position by bank dashboard.

• Display the cash position dashboard.

• Configure the cash position by currency dashboard.

• Display the cash position by currency dashboard.

• Configure the Deals dashboards.

• Display the investment mix dashboard.

• Display the debt mix dashboard.

• Display the fixed versus floating rate investments dashboard.

• Display the fixed versus floating rate debt dashboard.

• Display the open foreign exchange contracts dashboard.

• Configure the payments dashboard.

• Display the payments by source dashboard.

• Display the payments by status dashboard.

• Display the payments by bank dashboard.

• Display the payments by payment method.

• Configure the status of bank statement loans.

• Display the status of bank statement loans.

Pages Used to Configure and Display Treasury Dashboards

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position by Bank	TR_DASH_01_CFG	Treasury Dashboards, click the Cash Position by Bank link.	Configure the cash position by bank dashboard.
Cash Position by Bank	TR_DASH_CASH	Click the Save and go back to Dashboard link or Return to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position by Bank page.	Display the cash position by bank dashboard summary and detail data.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position by Currency	TR_DASH_PBC_CFG	Treasury Dashboards, click the Cash Position by Currency link.	Configure the cash position by currency dashboard.
Treasury Dashboards - Cash Position by Currency	TR_DASH_PBC	Click the Save and go back to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position.	Display the cash position by currency detail and summary data.
Dashboard Configuration - Deals	TR_DASH_03_CFG	Treasury Dashboards, click one of these links: Investment Mix; Debt Mix; Fixed vs. Floating Rate Investments; Fixed vs. Floating Rate Debt; Open Foreign Exchange Contracts or after displaying the selected dashboard, click the Update Configuration link.	Configure to display the investment mix, debt mix, fixed versus floating rate investments, fixed versus floating rate debt, and open foreign exchange contracts dashboards.
Treasury Dashboards – Debt Mix	TR_DASH_DEAL	Click the Save and go back to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.	Display the investment mix deals detail and summary data.
Dashboard Configuration - Time Series	TR_DASH_03_CFG2	Click the Time Series link on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.	Select a time series to apply to the Fixed vs. Floating Rate Investments and Fixed vs. Floating Rate Debt dashboards.
Dashboard Configuration - Payments by Source	TR_DASH_02_CFG	Treasury Dashboards, click the Payments by Source link or, after displaying Dashboard, click the Update Configuration link on the Treasury Dashboards page.	Configure the Payments by Source dashboard.

Configuring the Cash Position by Bank Dashboard

Access the Dashboard Configuration – Cash Position by Bank page (Treasury Dashboards, click the Cash Position by Bank link on the Treasury Dashboard Menu).

Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position by Bank page

Date Option   Allows you to view Cash Position for any date. Select from one of these values:

- *As of Date*

  Select this value and populate the date in As of Date field.

- *Today's Date*

  This value is your current system date.

Chart Control

Cash Position feature offers flexible reporting structure. Chart Control allows you to look up position data according to the Cash Position Structure used by an organization. Select one of these values to determine the data to include and the fields to display on the Cash Position dashboard.

- *Bank Code*

  Select this option if Cash Position data are generated using Bank Code.

- *Source Set*

  You can set up banks as source sets. Select this option and the system will base the cash position data that appears on the charts on one or more selected source sets.

- *Tree Node*

  You can set up banks as a tree node. Select this option and the system will base the cash position data that appears on the charts on one or more selected tree nodes.

Display Currency

Select the currency that you want to appear on the Cash Position by Bank or Cash Position by Currency dashboard.

Chart by Bank

Select this check box to display the data based on each bank associated with the cash position data. If you leave this check box blank, the data displays based on the either the tree nodes or source sets that you select in the Position Source grid. If you select *Bank Code* as the Chart Control value, this check box does not appear on the page.

Save and go back to dashboard

Click this link to save the configuration and return to the Treasury Dashboards page to display the selected dashboard based on the configuration.

Return to dashboard

Click this link to return to the selected dashboard on the Treasury Dashboards page after the configuration has been saved.

Return to menu

Click this link to return to the Treasury Dashboards menu.

Exchange Rate Information

Market Rate Index

Select the index that determines the exchange rate for the conversion of any currencies that apply to any cash position amounts that appear on the dashboard.

Rate Type

Select the rate type to apply to the conversion of any currencies associated with any cash position amounts that appear on the dashboard.

Currency Effective Date

Select the date that this currency exchange rate information will be applicable to the currencies that appears on the dashboard.

Position Source

The columns on this grid change based on whether you select the Chart Control as Bank Code, Source Set, or Tree Node. These fields determine the cash position.

SetID	Select the setID that to which the cash position data applies.
Tree Name	Select the cash position tree that will be used to display the data on the dashboard.
Bank Code	Displays this field only if *Bank Code* you selected in the Chart Control field. Select the bank code or codes for which you want to include cash position data on the dashboard.
Source Set	Displays this field only if you selected *Source Set* in the Chart Control field. Select one or more source sets for which you want to include cash position data on the dashboard.
Tree Node	Displays this field only if you selected *Tree Node* in the Chart Control field. Select one or more tree nodes for which you want to include cash position data on the dashboard.
Partner Bank	Displays this field only if you selected either *Source Set* or *Tree Node* in the Chart Control field. It is a prompt field with no edits, so you can enter freeform text that can be used to display chart data.

Position Date   Select one of these values.

- *Calc Date* (calculation date)

  The system searches for rows that have a calculation date equal to the specified date option.

- *Value Date*

  The system should searches for rows that have a value date equal to the date option.

Amount   Select one of these values.

- *Original*

  Enables you to look up the original position amount.

- *Weighted*

  Enables you to look up the weighted position amount.

Displaying the Cash Position by Bank Dashboard

Access the Cash Position by Bank Dashboard and Details (click the Save and go back to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position by Bank page).
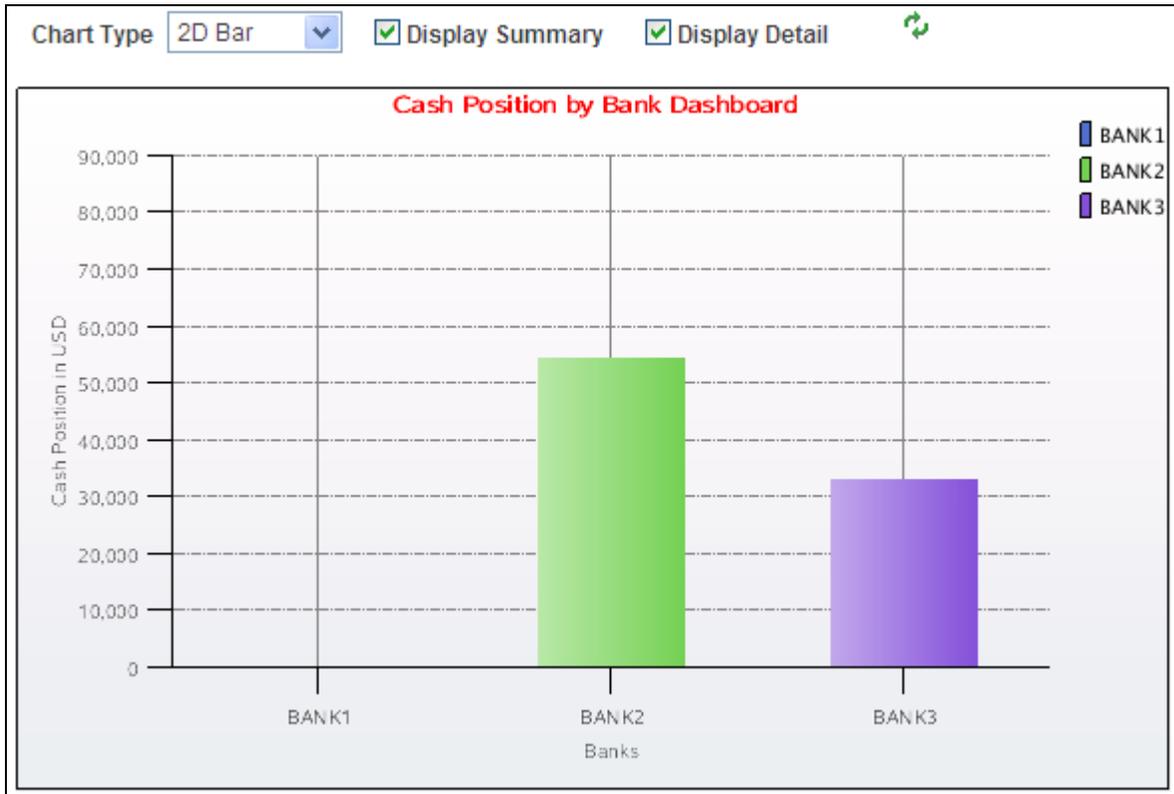
Treasury Dashboards - Cash Position by Bank (1 of 4)

This dashboard displays the cash position by the selected bank, tree node, or source set.

Treasury Dashboards - Cash Position by Bank summary (2 of 4)

Detail							
Tree Name	Tree Node	Position Source ID	Position Source Set	Payment Date	Calculation Date	Bank SetID	Bank Code
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	A_CZK_SUB_BBAL	BANK BALANCE	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	B_GBP_SUB_ACCT	BANK BALANCE	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	B_GBP_SUB_ACCT	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	B_GBP_SUB_ACCT	EFT TRANSACTIONS	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	B_GBP_SUB_ACCT	FEES	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	B_GBP_SUB_ACCT	MANUAL_ENTRY	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	C_CHF_SUB_ACCT	BANK BALANCE	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	C_CHF_SUB_ACCT	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	C_CHF_SUB_ACCT	EFT TRANSACTIONS	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	C_CHF_SUB_ACCT	FEES	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	C_CHF_SUB_ACCT	MANUAL_ENTRY	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		

Treasury Dashboards - Cash Position by Bank details (3 of 4)

Customize | Find |		First 1-11 of 11 Last
Original Amt	Weight Amt	Position Currency
1,093.91	1,093.91	CZK
1,093.91	1,093.91	EUR
12,000.00	12,000.00	EUR
-23,298.75	-23,298.75	EUR
-873.98	-873.98	EUR
61,577.97	61,577.97	EUR
1,093.91	1,093.91	CHF
11,884.20	11,884.20	CHF
-23,298.75	-23,298.75	CHF
-873.98	-873.98	CHF
61,577.97	61,577.97	CHF

Treasury Dashboards - Cash Position by Bank detail (4 of 4)

Configuring the Cash Position by Currency Dashboard

Access the Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position by Currency page (Treasury Dashboards, click the Cash Position by Currency link on the Treasury Dashboard menu).

Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position by Currency page

You configure the cash position by currency using the Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position by Currency page, which contains the same fields as the Dashboard Configuration – Cash Position by Bank page except that you cannot chart by each bank.

Displaying the Cash Position by Currency Dashboard

Access the Cash Position by Currency Dashboard page (click the Save button and go back to dashboard link or Return to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position by Currency page).
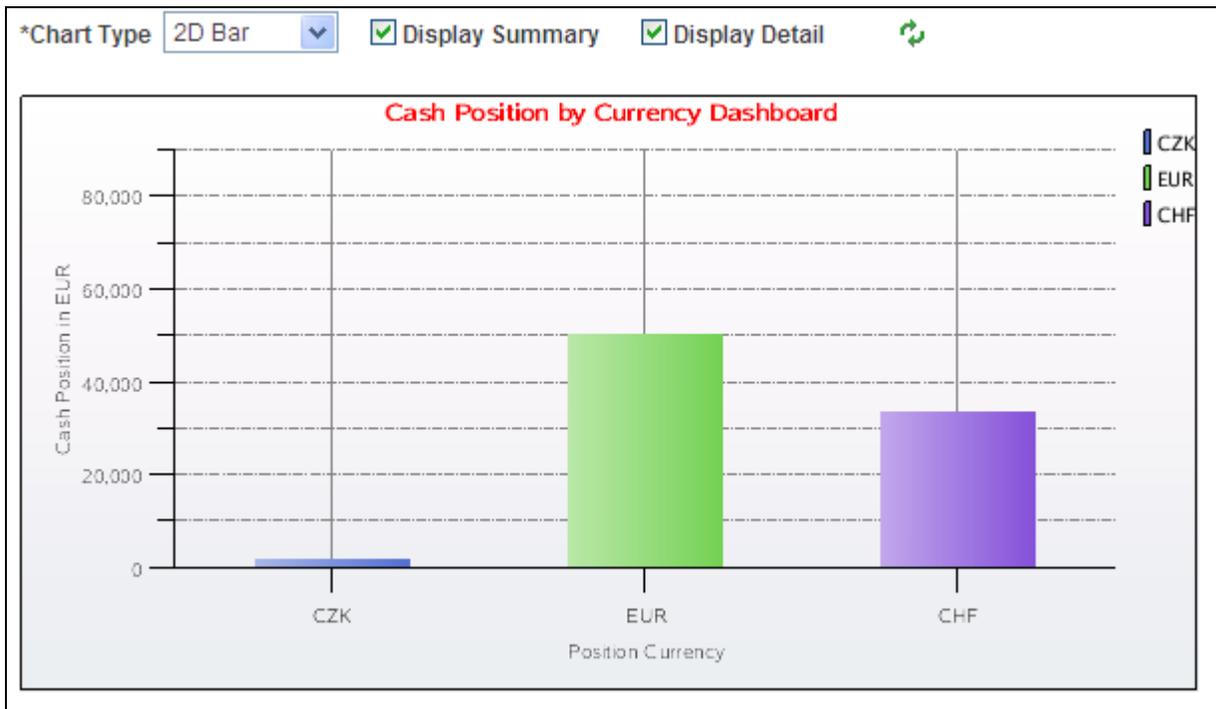
Treasury Dashboards - Cash Position by Currency Dashboard (1 of 4)

This dashboard compares the cash position based on each currency for which the cash position was calculated to the cash position amount in the display currency.

Treasury Dashboards - Cash Position by Currency page (2 of 4)

Detail							
Tree Name	Tree Node	Position Source ID	Position Source Set	Payment Date	Calculation Date	Bank SetID	Bank Code
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	A_CZK_SUB_ACCT	BANK BALANCE	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	A_CZK_SUB_ACCT	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	A_CZK_SUB_ACCT	EFT TRANSACTIONS	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	A_CZK_SUB_ACCT	FEES	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	A_CZK_SUB_ACCT	MANUAL_ENTRY	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	B_GBP_SUB_ACCT	BANK BALANCE	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	B_GBP_SUB_ACCT	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	B_GBP_SUB_ACCT	EFT TRANSACTIONS	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	B_GBP_SUB_ACCT	FEES	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	B_GBP_SUB_ACCT	MANUAL_ENTRY	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	C_CHF_SUB_ACCT	BANK BALANCE	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	C_CHF_SUB_ACCT	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	C_CHF_SUB_ACCT	EFT TRANSACTIONS	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	C_CHF_SUB_ACCT	FEES	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		
CASH_SWEEP_EUR	C_CHF_SUB_ACCT	MANUAL_ENTRY	CASH SWEEP	11/12/2008	10/05/2009		

Treasury Dashboards Details - Cash Position by Currency page (3 of 4)

Original Amt	Weight Amt	Currency
1,093.91	1,093.91	CZK
12,025.74	12,025.74	CZK
-23,298.75	-23,298.75	CZK
-873.86	-873.86	CZK
61,577.97	61,577.97	CZK
1,093.91	1,093.91	EUR
12,000.00	12,000.00	EUR
-23,298.75	-23,298.75	EUR
-873.98	-873.98	EUR
61,577.97	61,577.97	EUR
1,093.91	1,093.91	CHF
11,884.20	11,884.20	CHF
-23,298.75	-23,298.75	CHF
-873.98	-873.98	CHF
61,577.97	61,577.97	CHF

Customize | Find | First 1-15 of 15 Last

Treasury Dashboards Details - Cash Position by Currency page (4 of 4)

Configuring the Deals Dashboard

Access the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page (Treasury Dashboards, click the Investment Mix link).

Dashboard Configuration - Deals

Start Date:	10/06/2000 [31]	End Date:	10/06/2009 [31]
Time Interval:	Monthly ⌄	Define Time Series	
Short Term Days:	90		
Display Currency:	USD 🔍		

Exchange Rate Information

Market Rate Index	MODEL 🔍
Rate Type	CRRNT 🔍
Currency Effective Date	10/06/2009 [31]

Save and go back to dashboard   Return to dashboard   Return to menu

Dashboard Configuration - Deals page

Start Date and **End Date**	Select a start and end date to apply to the data that appears on the Fixed Rate vs. Floating Rate chart.
Time Interval	Select the appropriate time interval for which you want the chart to display data.
Define Time Series	Define monthly, quarterly, half-yearly or yearly time intervals based on business calendars.

Important! Open Foreign Exchange Contracts do not use time intervals.

Displaying the Investment Mix Dashboard

Access the Investment Mix dashboard page (click the Save button and go back to dashboard link or the Return to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page).
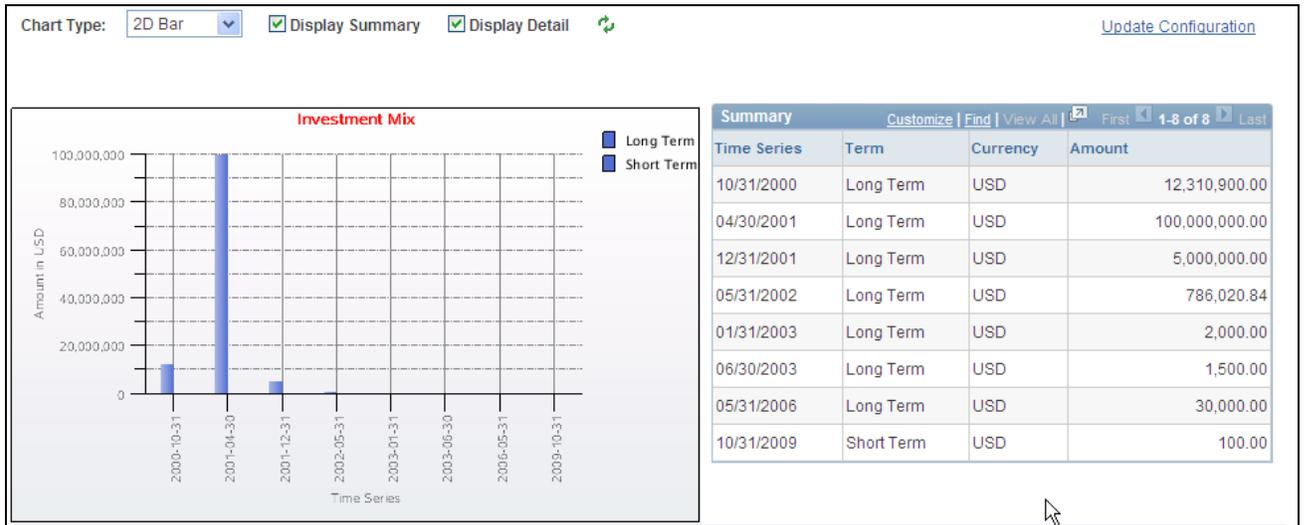
Treasury Dashboards - Investment Mix page (1 of 2)

Treasury Dashboards Details - Investment Mix page (2 of 2)

Displaying the Debt Mix Dashboard

Access the Debt Mix dashboard page (click the Save button and go back to dashboard link or Return to dashboard link on the Configure Dashboard - Deals page).
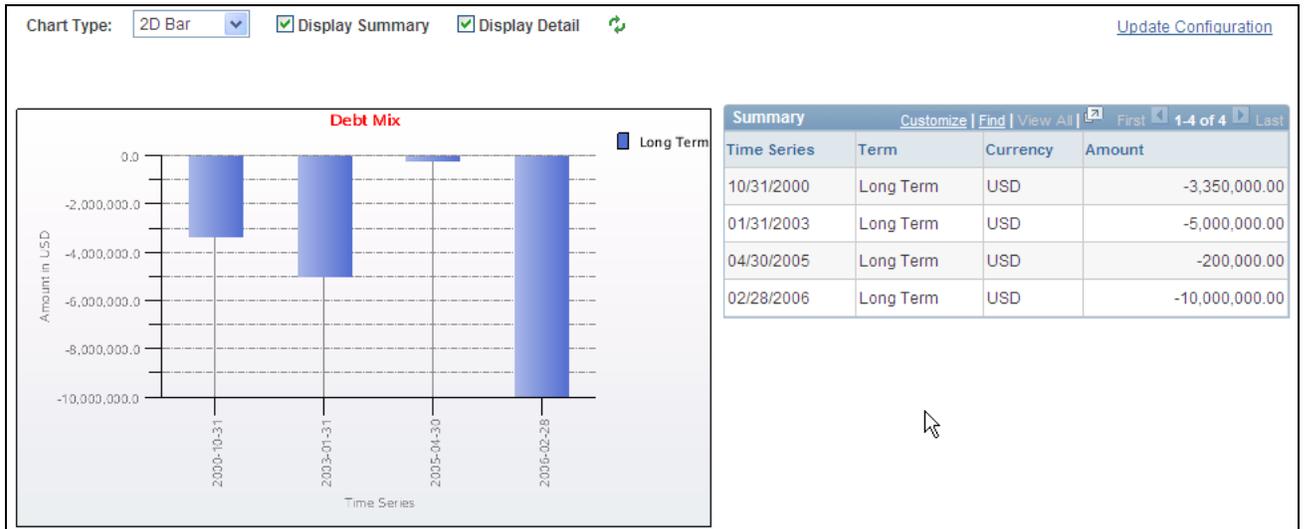
Treasury Dashboards - Debt Mix page (1 of 2)

Treasury Dashboards Details - Debt Mix page (2 of 2)

Displaying Fixed Versus Floating Rate Investments Dashboard

Access the Fixed Versus Floating Rate Investment dashboard page (click the Save button and go back to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page).
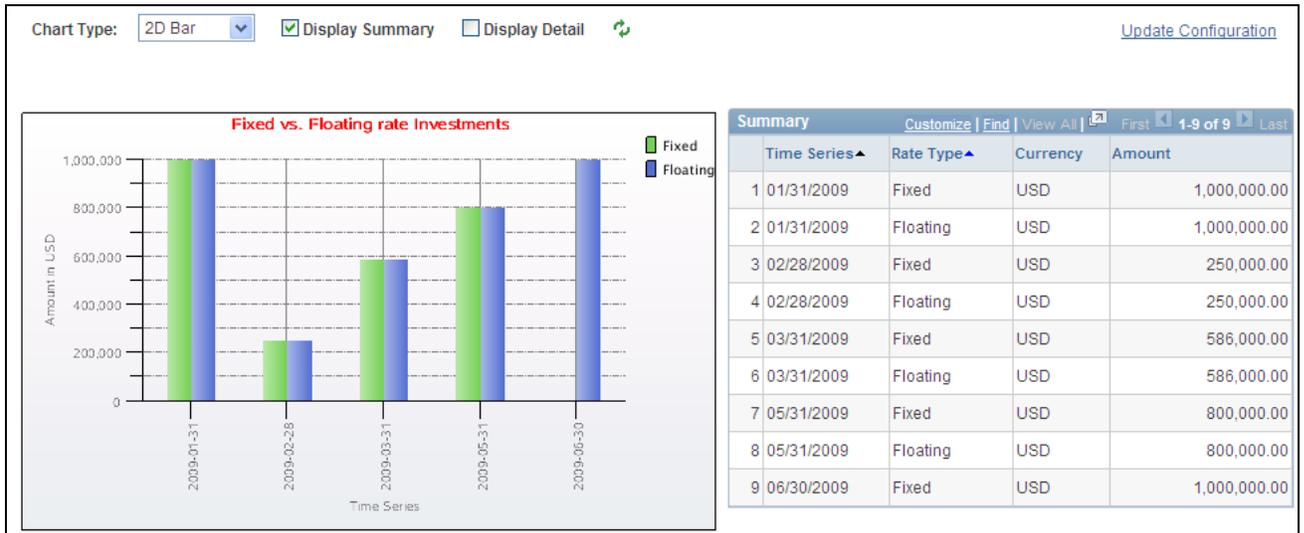
Treasury Dashboards - Fixed vs. Floating Rate Investments dashboard page

This dashboard displays the fixed rate versus the floating rate investment amounts based on a selected time series.

Displaying Fixed Versus Floating Rate Debt Dashboard

Access the Fixed vs. Floating Rate Debt dashboard page (click the Save button and go back to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page).
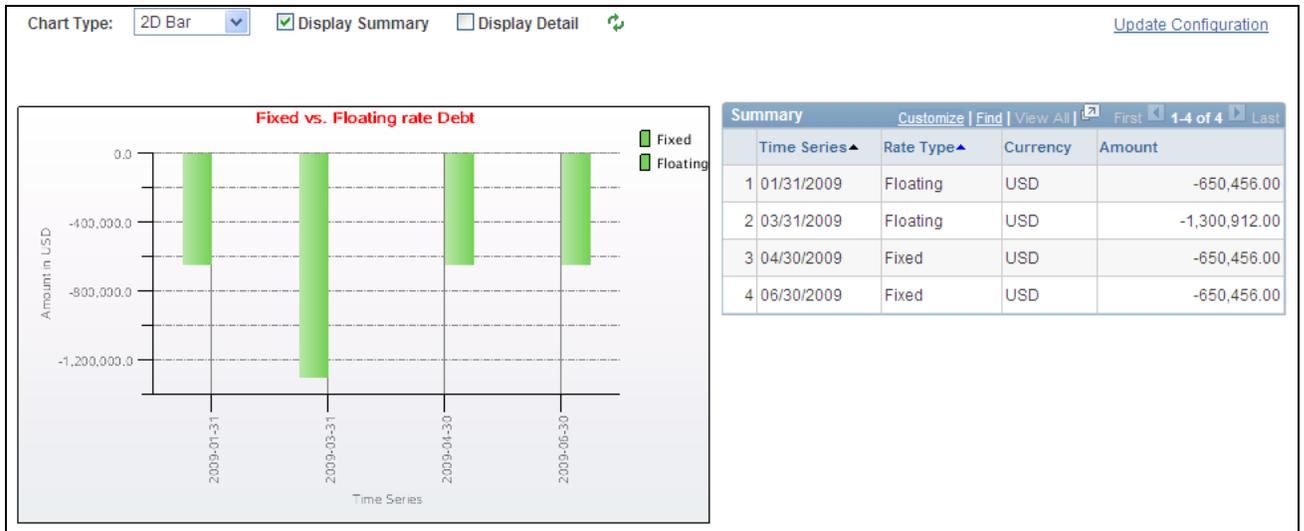
Treasury Dashboards - Fixed vs. Floating Rate Debt

This dashboard compares the total amount of debt accumulated based on a fixed interest rate versus a floating interest rate within a selected time series.

Displaying the Open Foreign Exchange Contracts Dashboard

Access the Open Foreign Exchange Contracts dashboard page (click the Save button and go back to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page).
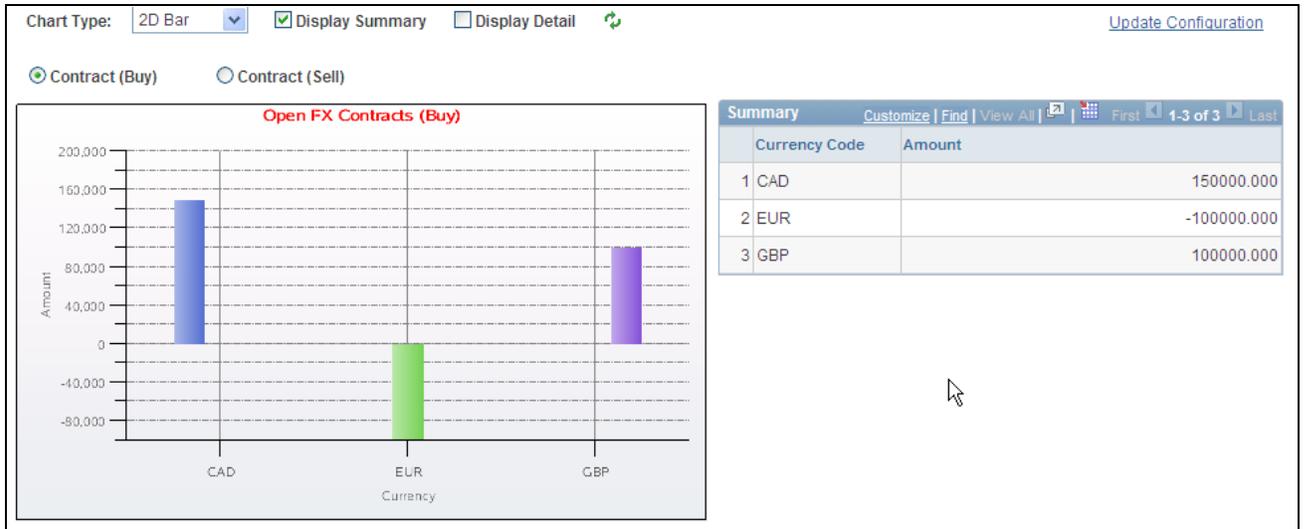
Treasury Dashboards - Open Foreign Exchange Contracts

This dashboard displays the amount of open foreign currency exchange contract bought or sold by an organization on a given date. In this example this was a buy contract.

Configuring the Payments by Source Dashboard

Access the Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source page (click the Payments by Source link on the Treasury Dashboards page).

Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source page

Date Options   Select one of these values.

                                        • *Today*

                                          Payments by source display on the chart based on your system's current
                                          date.

                                        • *Specific Date*

                                          Select this option and the Start Date and End Date fields are enabled.
                                          Select the start and end dates to which the payment data applies.

Business Unit   Select one or more business units to which the payment data that appears on
                                        the dashboard applies.

                                        Leave this field blank and the system will display payment data on the
                                        dashboard for all business units in your system.

Payment Source   Select one or more payment sources to which the payment data that appears
                                        on the dashboard applies.

                                        Leave this field blank and the system will display payment data on the
                                        dashboard for all payment sources.

Displaying the Payments by Source Dashboard

Access the Payments by Source dashboard page (click the Save button and go back to dashboard link or
Return to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Payments by Source page).
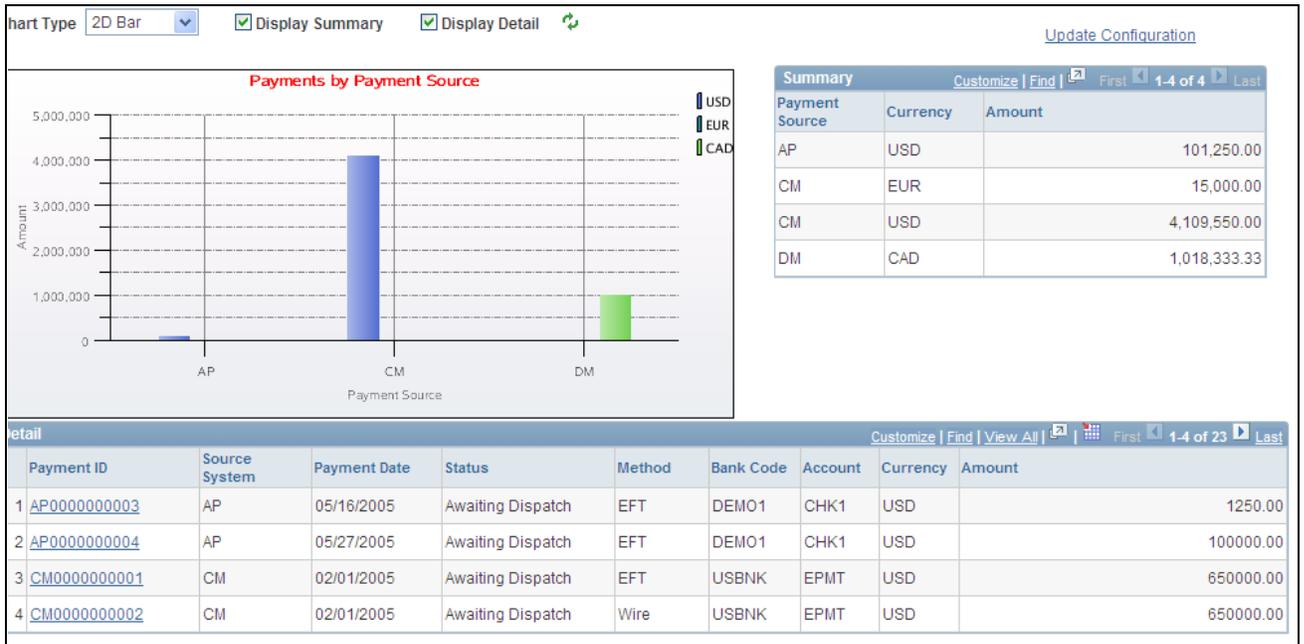
Treasury Dashboards - Payments by Source
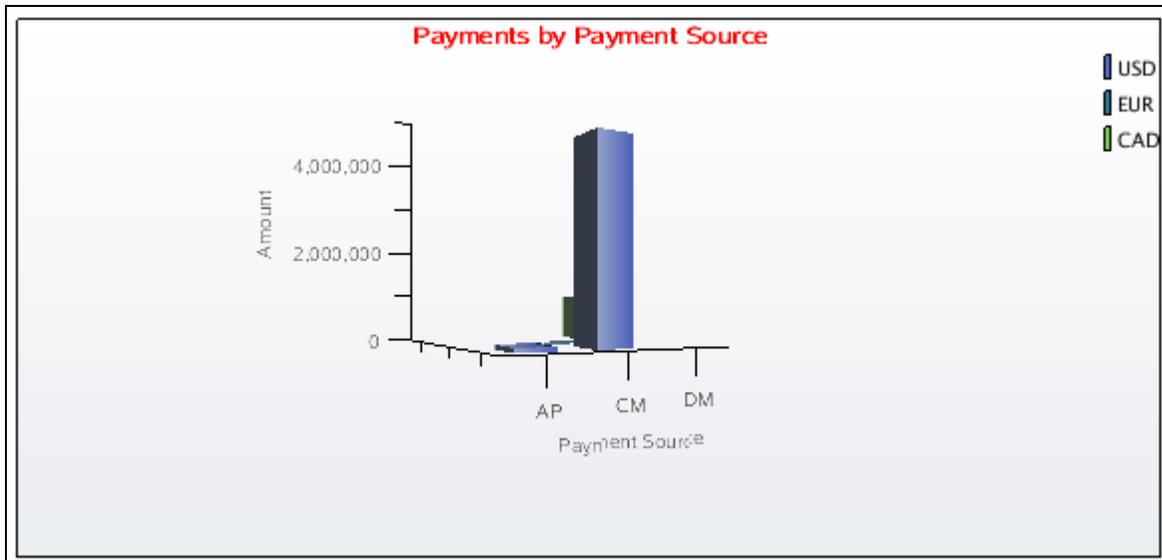
Treasury Dashboards - Payments by Source 3-D chart

Displaying the Payments by Status Dashboard

Access the Payments by Status dashboard page (click the Save button and go back to dashboard link or Return to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Payments by Source page).
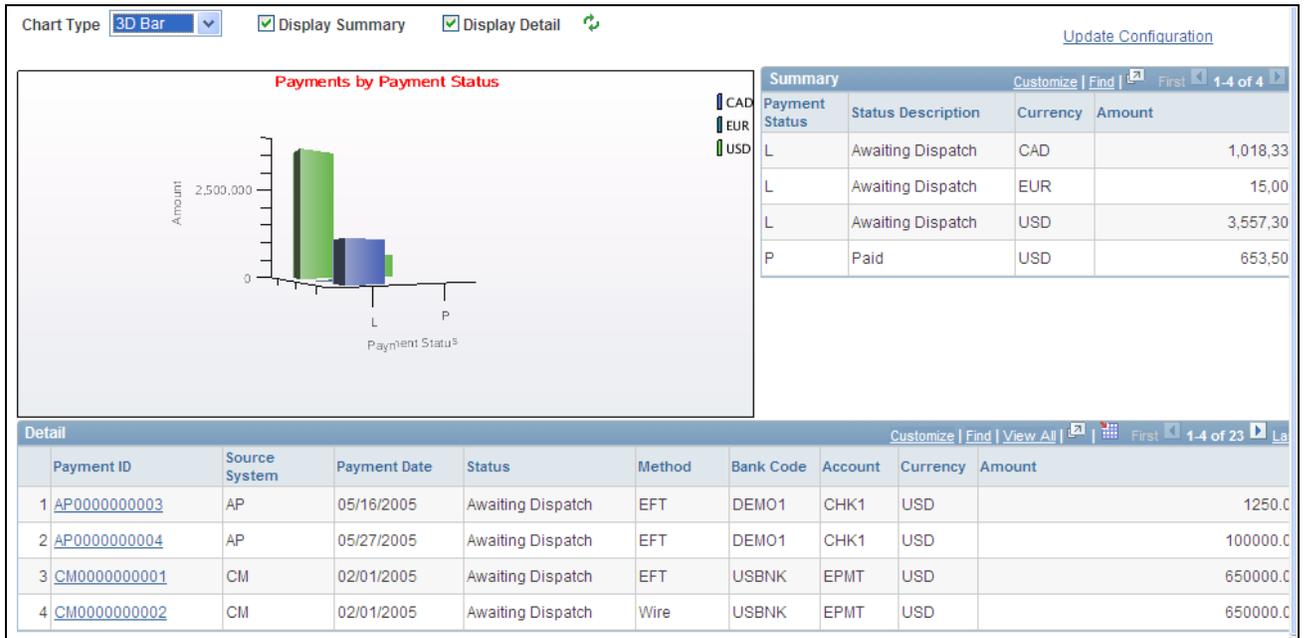
Treasury Dashboards - Payments by Status page

This dashboard uses the same Dashboard Configuration - Payments by Source page. When you return to the dashboard after defining the configuration, the system displays the total payment amount based on the status of the payments.

Displaying the Payments by Bank Dashboard

Access the Payments by Bank dashboard page (click the Save button and go back to dashboard link or Return to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Payments by Source page).
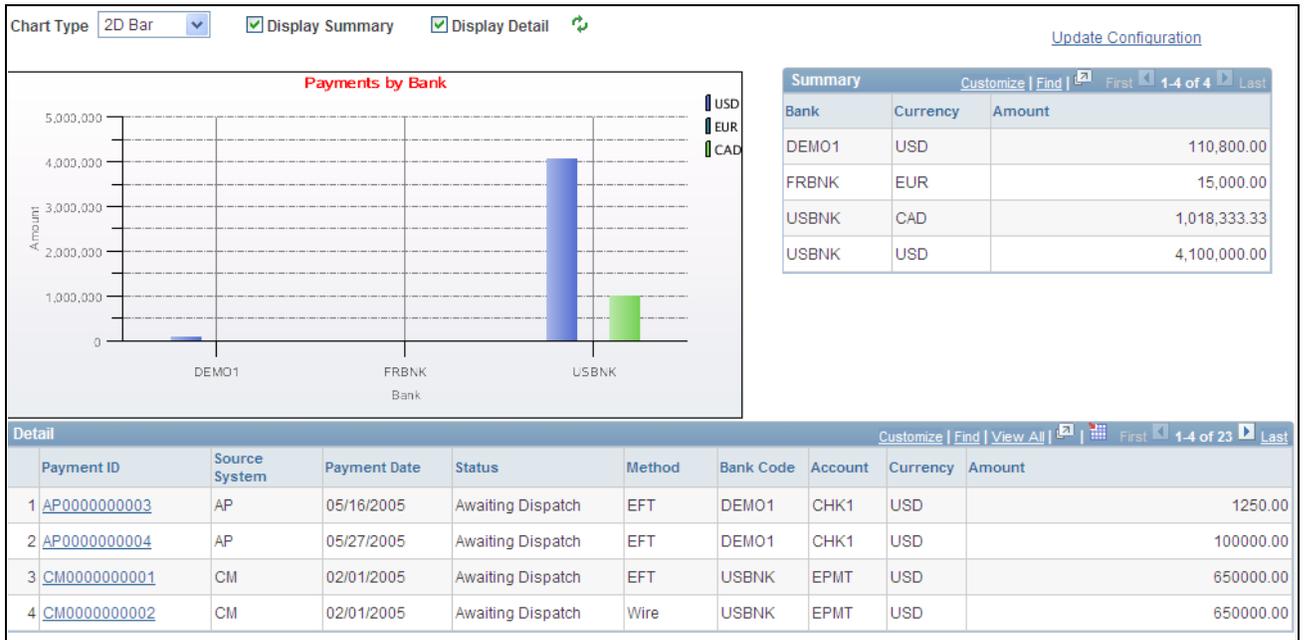
Treasury Dashboards - Payments by Bank

This dashboard uses the Dashboard Configuration - Payments by Source page to configure the data for Payments by Bank. When you access the dashboard it displays the total payment amounts for each of your organization's banks that have payments associated with them.

Displaying the Payment by Payment Methods Dashboard

Access the Payments by Payment Method dashboard page (click the Save and go back to dashboard link or Return to dashboard link on the Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source page).
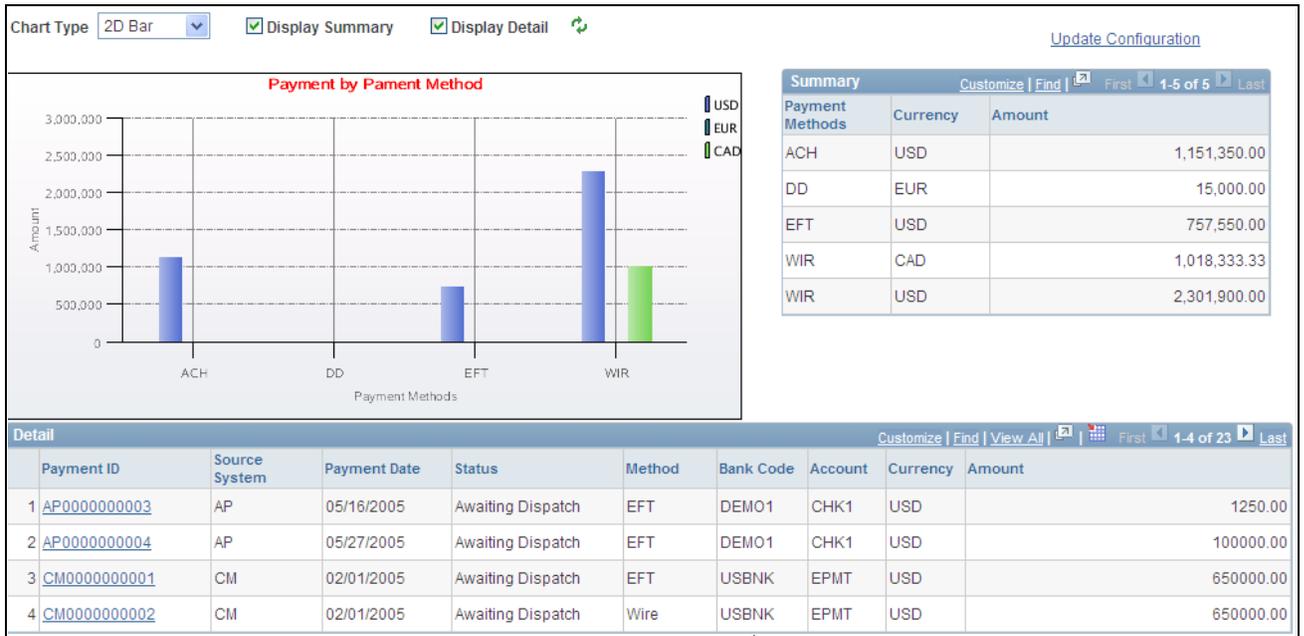
Treasury Dashboards - Payments by Payment Method

Configuring the Bank Statement Load Dashboard

Access the Dashboard Configuration - Bank Statement Load page (click the Status of Bank Statement Load link on the Treasury Dashboards page).

Dashboard Configuration - Bank Statement Load page

Date Options	Select one of these options.
	• *Today*
	Displays statement loads as of your current system date.
	• *As of Date*
	The As of Date field is enabled so that you can select the date that the statement loads that appear on the dashboard start from.
Exclude Types	Add and select the types of bank statements that you want to exclude from displaying on the Bank Statement Load dashboard.
Exclude Banks	Add and select the bank codes and bank accounts that you want to exclude from displaying on the Bank Statement Load dashboard.

Displaying the Bank Statement Load Dashboard

Access the Bank Statement Load dashboard page (click the Status of Bank Statement Loads link on the Treasury Dashboards page).
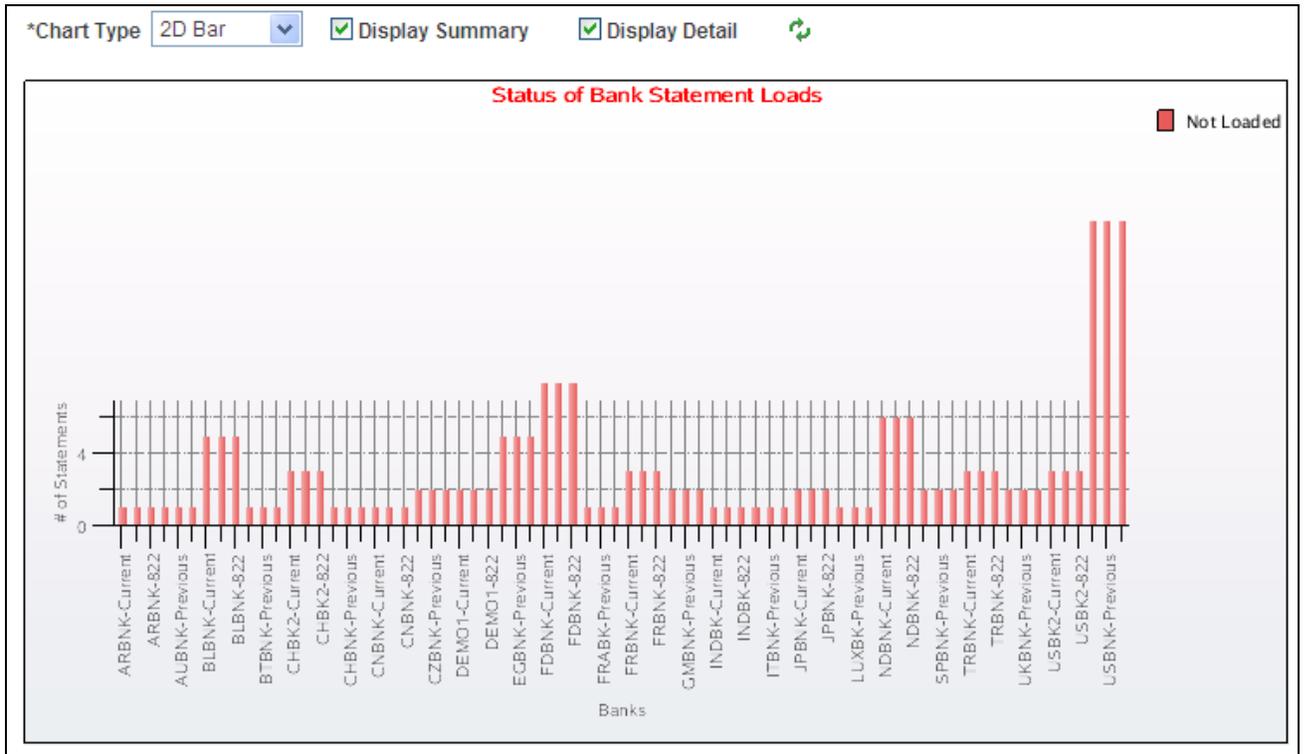
Treasury Dashboards - Status of Bank Statement Loads page

This dashboard displays the number of statements loaded based on the banks you selected on the Dashboard Configuration - Bank Statement load page.

Treasury Dashboards Summary - Status of Bank Statement Loads page

Detail				Customize | Find |
Bank Statement Type	**As Of Date**	**Bank Code**	**External Bank ID**	**Bank Account #**
Current Day	10/07/2009	BLBNK	320	0347134
Current Day	10/07/2009	FDBNK	121000358	121000358
Current Day	10/07/2009	FDBNK	121000358	985675123
Current Day	10/07/2009	FRBNK	00001	00000000003
Current Day	10/07/2009	JPBNK	2007	7813008
Current Day	10/07/2009	USBNK	121042882	012345AR
Current Day	10/07/2009	CHBK2	00700	115201849175
Current Day	10/07/2009	NDBNK	NLD BANK	6483157924
Current Day	10/07/2009	NDBNK	NLD BANK	9823458561
Current Day	10/07/2009	NDBNK	NLD BANK	4312579660
Previous Day	10/07/2009	CHBNK	0001	112233
Previous Day	10/07/2009	DEMO1	071000039	456789123
Previous Day	10/07/2009	FDBNK	121000358	13145555
Previous Day	10/07/2009	LUXBK	095	112233
Previous Day	10/07/2009	USBNK	121042882	0741-256206

Treasury Dashboards Detail - Status of Bank Statement Loads page

First ◁ 1-222 of 222 ▷ Last
Cycle Status
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded
Not Loaded

Treasury Dashboards Detail - Status of Bank Statement Loads page

Appendix A

Configuring Batch Processes for Cash Management

This appendix discusses how to configure temporary tables for batch processing.

Configuring Temporary Tables for Batch Processing

When you run batch processes in parallel, you risk data contention and deadlocks on temporary tables. To avoid this, PeopleTools enables you to dedicate specific instances of temporary tables for each process. When PeopleSoft Application Engine manages a dedicated temporary table instance, it controls the locking of the table before use and the unlocking of the table after use.

When you decide how many temporary table instances to dedicate for a process, consider the number of temporary tables that the process uses. More instances result in more copies of the temporary tables on the system. For example, if a process uses 25 temporary tables and you have 10 instances for a process, you will have 250 temporary tables on the system.

If you run processes in parallel and all of the dedicated temporary table instances are in use, the performance of the process decreases. You need to find a balance that works for your organization.

Note. When you specify the number of instances, PeopleSoft Application Designer displays a list of the temporary tables for the process. Use the list to determine how many temporary tables each process uses.

Specify how many temporary table instances to dedicate for each of the following batch processes that can run in parallel in Cash Management:

• Bank Statement Accounting (TR_STMTACCTG).

• IHB (in-house banking) Interest Accruals (TR_TRINTACU)

• Netting Auto Selection (TR_NET_ASEL).

• Netting Closing (TR_NET_ARCLS {library run from AP_APY2015}).

• Netting Closing (TR_NET_CLOSE {library run from AP_APY2015}).

• Cash Position/Position Monitor (TR_POS_TOTAL).

• Pool Transaction Information (TRP_TXN_XFM)

• Investment Pool Income Distribution (TRP_INC_DIST)

• PeopleSoft Cash Management to JD Edwards General Accounting integration (TR_JRNL_INT)

The PeopleTools documentation discusses the usage of temporary tables in detail and describes how to specify the number of instances.

If you run any of the General Ledger COBOL processes, also configure the temporary tables for those processes. The *PeopleSoft General Ledger 9.1 PeopleBook* discusses how to do this in detail.

See Also

PeopleSoft General Ledger 9.1 PeopleBook, "Optimizing General Ledger Performance"

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Application Engine, "Using Temporary Tables"

Appendix B

Delivered Workflows for Cash Management

This appendix discusses delivered workflows for Cash Management.

See Also

PeopleTools PeopleBook: Workflow Technology

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Applications User's Guide

Delivered Workflows for Cash Management

This section discusses Cash Management workflows. The workflows are listed alphabetically by workflow name.

Settlement Selection and Settlement Approval

This section discusses the Settlement Selection and Settlement Approval workflow.

Note that these workflows are separate workflows that use the same pages and processes.

Description

Event Description	When you select a settlement on the Select Settlements page, or approve a settlement on the Approve Settlements page. **Note.** The Select Settlements and Approve Settlements page have the same object name (STL_SELECTION).
Action Description	Routes names of selected or approved settlements to an assigned user's worklist.
Notification Method	Worklist
Active or Inactive	Active

Workflow Objects

Approval Rule Set	Execute Treasury Settlements
Business Process	Managing Cash (TR_MANAGE_CASH)
Activity	Execute Treasury Settlements
Role	In PeopleTools Application Designer, you can edit the delivered approval rule set to change the assigned roles.

Appendix C

Cash Management Reports

This appendix provides an overview of Cash Management reports and enables you to view a summary table of all reports.

Note. For samples of these reports, see the Portable Document Format (PDF) files that are published with your online documentation.

See Also

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler

Cash Management Reports: A to Z

This table lists all of the reports provided with Cash Management, sorted alphanumerically by report ID. The reports listed are Crystal and BI Publisher for PeopleSoft reports.

Report ID and Report Name	Description	Navigation	Run Control Page
FIN3003 Fees & Interest (Crystal)	Shows miscellaneous transaction details for a specified bank ID, bank account, and statement ID number.	Cash Management, Reports, Fees and Interest	RUN_FIN3003
FSX3003 Fees & Interest (BI Publisher)	Shows miscellaneous transaction details for a specified bank ID, bank account, and statement ID number.	Cash Management, Reports, Fees and Interest	RUN_FIN3003
TRC1000 Accounting Entries (Crystal)	Shows comprehensive accounting entry information for a specified business unit and accounting ID.	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries Report	RUN_TRC1000

Report ID and Report Name	Description	Navigation	Run Control Page
TRX1000 Accounting Entries (BI Publisher)	Shows comprehensive accounting entry information for a specified business unit and accounting ID.	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries Report	RUN_TRC1000
TRC1004 Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions (Crystal)	Lists actual versus projected cash positions for a specified business unit, tree name, and tree node.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by BU	RUN_TRC1004
TRX1004 Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions (BI Publisher)	Lists actual versus projected cash positions for a specified business unit, tree name, and tree node.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by BU	RUN_TRC1004
TRC1008 Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions by Currency (Crystal)	Lists, by currency code, actual versus projected cash positions for a specified business unit, tree name, and tree node.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by BU	RUN_TRC1008
TRX1008 Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions by Currency (BI Publisher)	Lists, by currency code, actual versus projected cash positions for a specified business unit, tree name, and tree node.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by BU	RUN_TRC1008
TRC1009 Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions by Account (Crystal)	Lists actual versus projected cash positions for comparison by bank account number.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by Account	RUN_TRC1009
TRX1009 Actual vs. Projected Cash Positions by Account (BI Publisher)	Lists actual versus projected cash positions for comparison by bank account number.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by Account	RUN_TRC1009
TRC1010 Settlement Instructions (Crystal)	Shows settlement instruction information for all settlement IDs of a specified setID.	Cash Management, Reports, Settlement Instructions	RUN_TRC1010
TRX1010 Settlement Instructions (BI Publisher)	Shows settlement instruction information for all settlement IDs of a specified setID.	Cash Management, Reports, Settlement Instructions	RUN_TRC1010

Report ID and Report Name	Description	Navigation	Run Control Page
TRC1014 Cash Flow Settlements (Crystal)	Lists bank, account, and settlement information for cash flows of a specified business unit and time period.	Cash Management, Reports, Cash Flow Settlements	RUN_TRC1014
TRX1014 Cash Flow Settlements (BI Publisher)	Lists bank, account, and settlement information for cash flows of a specified business unit and time period.	Cash Management, Reports, Cash Flow Settlements	RUN_TRC1014
TRC3005 In-House Bank Statement (Crystal)	Lists transaction and interest accrual activity for a specified bank and account during a defined time frame.	Cash Management, In-House Banking, In-House Bank Statements	RUN_TRC3005
TRX3005 In-House Bank Statement (BI Publisher)	Lists transaction and interest accrual activity for a specified bank and account during a defined time frame.	Cash Management, In-House Banking, In-House Bank Statements	RUN_TRC3005
TRC4000 Netting Balance List (Crystal)	Lists comprehensive balance information for all nets of a specified netting status and time period.	Cash Management, Reports, Netting Balance List	RUN_TRC4000
TRX4000 Netting Balance List (BI Publisher)	Lists comprehensive balance information for all nets of a specified netting status and time period.	Cash Management, Reports, Netting Balance List	RUN_TRC4000
TRC4010 Netting Advice Balance Summary (Crystal)	Lists total receivable, total payable, and total net amounts for a specified netting status and time period. The amounts are formatted for faxing.	Cash Management, Report, Netting Advice Summary	RUN_TRC4010
TRX4010 Netting Advice Balance Summary (BI Publisher)	Lists total receivable, total payable, and total net amounts for a specified netting status and time period. The amounts are formatted for faxing.	Cash Management, Report, Netting Advice Summary	RUN_TRC4010

Report ID and Report Name	Description	Navigation	Run Control Page
TRC4020 Netting Advice Balance Detail (Crystal)	Lists detailed information (such as accounts payable/accounts receivable association, business unit, gross amount, and net amount) for all nets of a specified netting status and timeframe.	Cash Management, Report, Netting Advice Detail	RUN_TRC4020
TRX4020 Netting Advice Balance Detail (BI Publisher)	Lists detailed information (such as accounts payable/accounts receivable association, business unit, gross amount, and net amount) for all nets of a specified netting status and timeframe.	Cash Management, Report, Netting Advice Detail	RUN_TRC4020
TRC4050 Fee Structures (Crystal)	Shows comprehensive fee structure information for a specified bank code, including the fee description, type, minimum and maximum ranges, and rate and price information.	Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures Report	RUN_TRC4050
TRX4050 Fee Structures (BI Publisher)	Shows comprehensive fee structure information for a specified bank code, including the fee description, type, minimum and maximum ranges, and rate and price information.	Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures Report	RUN_TRC4050
TRC4060 Actual vs. Projected Cash Position (Crystal)	Lists actual versus projected cash positions by a specified tree name and value date.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by Position	RUN_TRC4060
TRX4060 Actual vs. Projected Cash Position (BI Publisher)	Lists actual versus projected cash positions by a specified tree name and value date.	Cash Management, Reports, Actual v Projected by Position	RUN_TRC4060
TRC4090 Book-to-Bank Reconciliation (Crystal)	Lists book-to-bank reconciliation details for a selected bank account, including adjusted bank statement balance or ledger balance information.	Banking, Reconcile Statements, Book to Bank Reconciliation Click Detail on the Book to Bank Reconciliation page. Click Report on the Book to Bank Reconciliation Details page.	RUN_TRC4090

Report ID and Report Name	Description	Navigation	Run Control Page
TRX4090 Book-to-Bank Reconciliation	Lists book-to-bank reconciliation details for a selected bank account, including adjusted bank statement balance or ledger balance information.	Banking, Reconcile Statements, Book to Bank Reconciliation Click Detail on the Book to Bank Reconciliation page. Click Report on the Book to Bank Reconciliation Details page.	RUN_TRC4090
TRC4100 Participant Positions by Pool (Crystal)	Lists the positions of investment pools and the positions of each pool's participants for a specified business unit.	Cash Management, Reports, Participant Positions by Pool	RUN_TRC4100
TRX4100 Participant Positions by Pool (BI Publisher)	Lists the positions of investment pools and the positions of each pool's participants for a specified business unit.	Cash Management, Reports, Participant Positions by Pool	RUN_TRC4100
TRX5000 Cash Sweep Structure	Lists detailed information for a cash sweep structure, includes the master bank account, overall cash sweep processing attributes, sub-accounts, sub-account processing attributes and audit information.	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Structure	RUN_TRX5000
TRX5001 Cash Sweep Bank Accounts	Lists all of the cash sweep structures associated with a given bank account and whether the account is the master bank account or subaccount in the structure.	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Bank Accounts	RUN_TRX5001
TRX5002 Cash Sweep Summary	Summarizes cash sweep amounts within a cash sweep structure by bank account.	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Summary	RUN_TRX5002
TRX5003 Denied Cash Sweep Payments	Run the Denied Cash Sweep Payments report.	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Denied Cash Sweep Payments	RUN_TRX5003

Index

A

B

C

D

P

R

W